ARTEP 5-423-35-MTP

Engineer Company, Combat Support Equipment

JULY 2003

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

ARMY TRAINING AND
EVALUATION PROGRAM
No. 5-423-35-MTP

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, DC, 8 July 2003

MISSION TRAINING PLAN

for the

Engineer Company, Combat Support Equipment

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

Table of Contents ..... **i**

Preface ..... **ii**

Chapter 1. Unit Training **1-1**

Chapter 2. Training Matrixes **2-1**

Chapter 3. Mission Outlines/Training Plans **3-1**

Chapter 4. Training Exercise **4-1**

Chapter 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines **5-1**

Chapter 6. External Evaluation **6-1**

Appendix A - Exercise Operation Order **A-1**

Appendix B - Threat Analysis **B-1**

Appendix C - Metric Conversion Chart **C-1**

Glossary **Glossary-1**

References **References-1**

Questionnaire **Questionnaire-1**

*This publication, along with ARTEPs 5-413-35-MTP, 5-434-35-MTP, and 5-603-35-MTP, supersedes ARTEP 5-413-33-MTP, 3 October 1995.

PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides active component (AC) and reserve component (RC) training managers with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. This MTP aligns with and is part of the United States (US) Army Training and Tactical Doctrine Program. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact the priorities, the operations described here are expected to be executed with a high level of proficiency. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) in this MTP. Standards for training may be raised, but they may not be lowered.

This MTP applies to the engineer company, combat support equipment table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) 05423L000.

The proponent for this publication is HQ, TRADOC. Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 directly to Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns refer to both men and women.

CHAPTER 1

Unit Training

1-1. General. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit training program will depend on the—

- Unit mission-essential task list (METL).
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance.
- Unit training priorities.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program. In addition to collective tasks, the training program includes references to soldier training publications (STPs) for the appropriate military occupational specialty (MOS) and skill levels. The unit training program consists of the following publications:

a. Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) 5-423-35-MTP for the engineer company, combat support equipment.

b. STPs for the appropriate MOSs and skill levels.

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and three appendixes.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationship between the mission and the collective tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans, presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of a field training exercise (FTX). This exercise provides training information and a preconstructed sample scenario. It can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. This exercise may be modified to suit the training needs of the unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, contains the T&EOs for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the unit. Each task is a T&EO that identifies task steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) countertasks. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs can be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise. Each T&EO is part of a mission and, in various combinations, composes the training exercise in Chapter 4.

(1) Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

(a) Elements. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that perform the task.

(b) Task. This describes the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.

(c) Reference. This identifies the publication used to develop the task and is in parenthesis following the task number. If more than one reference is used, the reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, it is not underlined.

(d) Iteration. This is used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The M identifies when the task is performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

(e) Commander/leader assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature. Therefore, use all available evaluation data and subunit-leader input to develop an assessment of the overall capability of the organization to accomplish the task. Use the ratings listed below.

- **T - Trained.** The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.
- **P - Needs practice.** The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve the task to standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.
- **U - Untrained.** The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

(f) Conditions. This describes the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

(g) Task standards. This states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and should be understood by every soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit training status by using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC). The conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common baseline for unit performance.

(h) Task steps and performance measures. This is a list of actions that are required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with any supporting individual tasks and their references. An asterisk (*) to the left of the step number indicates the leader tasks within each T&EO. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of the task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard. The task step may contain performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step.

(i) GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an X in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a GO for the task step to be successfully performed.

(j) Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer with a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as GO. It also provides the evaluator with a means to rate the unit demonstrated performance as a GO or NO-GO. It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

(k) Supporting individual tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. The reference number, task number, and task title for each

individual task are listed.

(l) Supporting collective tasks. This is a listing of all supporting collective tasks required to correctly perform the task. The reference number, task number, and task title for each individual task are listed.

(m) Opposing forces tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. The standards ensure that the OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or lose to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

(2) Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation, provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

g. Appendix A, Sample Operation Order, contains a sample operation order (OPORD) to be used with the exercise in Chapter 4.

h. Appendix B, Threat Analysis, describes the local, regional, and global threats, as well as special situations that impact operations.

i. Appendix C, Metric Conversion Chart, shows how to convert US and metric measurements.

1-4. Missions and Tasks.

a. This MTP concerns specific missions found in the TOE and an implied mission that the unit must perform in order to accomplish the specified missions. The critical missions are the focus for the unit. The commander may supplement these missions with his own. The following is a listing of the missions for the unit:

- Conduct general engineer operations.
- Support engineer combat operations with manned engineer equipment.
- Sustain unit operations.
- Conduct sustainment engineering operations.
- Defend the unit.
- Conduct unit survivability operations.

b. Each of these tasks may be trained individually or jointly with other tasks. Training is based on the criteria described in the T&EOs. Several T&EOs can be trained as a situational training exercise (STX). Various combinations of STXs can be used to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation that is designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the unit ability to perform multiple missions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Squad tasks are trained in much the same way as described above. However, the squad leader must also train the drills provided in the drill book.

d. Leader tasks that support the missions of the unit are trained through STP training, battle simulations, and execution of unit missions.

e. Individual tasks that support unit tasks are mastered by training to standards outlined in the appropriate STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective-task training.

1-5. Training Principles. This MTP is based on the training principles explained in Field Manual (FM) 7-0.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program developed and executed by the engineer battalion to train to standards in its critical wartime missions will be a component of the Army Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS). The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. CATS will provide the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training events and resources required to facilitate training to standard. CATS will be embedded in the Standard Army Training System (SATS) version 4.1 and higher. The Web site for this information is http://www.atsc.army.mil/atmd/strac.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive menu for training, reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The training strategy of the unit is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard by listing required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. The training strategies to be provided in the SATS 4.1 will provide the means whereby those tasks that can be trained through a focused and integrated training plan.

c. The unit training strategy will be comprised of three separate training strategies. When integrated with the training tasks found in this MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard. The elements of the unit training strategy are discussed below.

(1) Maneuver- and collective-training strategy. The maneuver- and collective-training strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depicts those resources that are required to support the training events.

(2) Gunnery strategy. The gunnery strategy is based on weapons systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapons training. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from the Standards in Training Commission (STRAC) manual or the appropriate FMs.

(3) Soldier strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

d. A vital element in the training strategy of the unit is the identification of critical training gates. Critical training gates are defined as training events that must be conducted to standard before moving on to a more difficult or resource-intensive training event or task. Training gates follow the crawl, walk, run training methodology. For instance, if the unit training strategy calls for conducting an FTX, and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the training tasks in the STX must be trained to standard before conducting the FTX. Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess the preparedness of the soldiers, or units, to move on to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates is made recognizing that the unit METL and the commander's assessment of his unit training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective-training exercises in a specific unit training strategy.

e. When developing the unit training plan, the commander identifies from the MTP the training tasks required to train his METL.

1-7. Training Conduct. This MTP is designed to facilitate planning, preparing, and conducting unit training as explained in FMs 7-0 and 25-101. The commander performs the following:

a. Assigns the missions and supporting tasks for training based on his METL and guidance from the next higher headquarters (HQ). Trainers must plan and execute training to support this guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the STXs and the FTXs provided will support, or can be modified to support, the command guidance. If they do not support the guidance or if they need to be modified, refer to the matrixes in Chapter 2. These matrixes provide a list of all critical collective tasks, drills, and individual tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritizes the tasks that need training. There is never time to train everything. Orient the training toward the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrates training tasks into the training schedule, using the following procedures:

(1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency that they need to be trained.

(2) Determine the amount of time required and how to use multiechelon training for the best results.

(3) Determine where the training can take place.

(4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.

(5) Organize needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.

e. Approves the list of tasks to be trained and schedules them on the unit training schedule.

f. Determines the equipment and supplies needed to conduct the training.

g. Keeps subordinate leaders informed, and oversees their training. The standards must be rigidly enforced.

1-8. Force Protection.

a. Safety. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and risk management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes the commander’s review of operational safety, and leads to decision making at a level of command that is appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units protect combat power through accident prevention, which enables units to win quickly and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines the ability of a unit to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are as follows:

(1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform tasks to standard.

(2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.

(3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.

(4) Standards and procedures for task preferences that are clear and practical.

(5) Support for task preference, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities, and services.

b. Risk Management. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It helps commanders and leaders identify and predict the next accident. Once understood, risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment. Risk management, in theory, is a five-step, cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5.

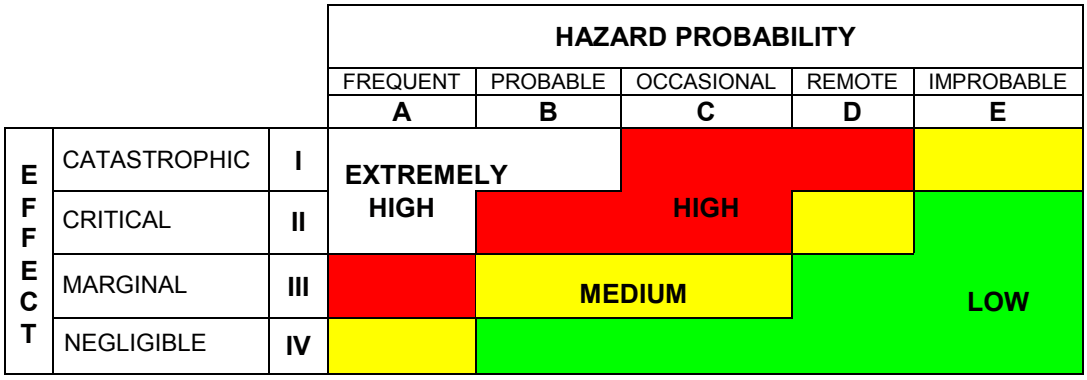
Step 1. Identify Any Hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the mission.

Step 2. Assess Hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of it causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army standard risk assessment matrix in Figure 1-1 is a tool to use for assessing hazards.

Step 3. Make Risk Decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operation. Accept no unnecessary risks, and make any remaining risk decisions at the proper level of command.

Step 4. Implement Controls. Integrate specific controls into operation plans (OPLANs), OPORDs, standing operating procedures (SOPs), and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

Step 5. Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards, to include a follow-up and an after-action review (AAR). Develop lessons learned.



Severity

Catastrophic	Death, permanent total disability, system loss, major property damage
Critical	Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of three months, major system damage, significant property damage
Marginal	Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system/property damage
Negligible	First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor system impairment

Probability

Frequent	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs often in career/equipment or both service life Continuously experienced
Probable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs several times in career/equipment service life Occurs frequently
Occasional	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life Occurs sporadically or several times in inventory service life
Remote	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Possible to occur in career/equipment service life Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life
Improbable	Individual soldier/item All soldiers exposed or item inventory	Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life Possible, but not probable; occurs only very rarely

Risk Levels

Extremely High	Loss of ability to accomplish mission
High	Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards
Medium	Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission
Low	Little or no impact on mission accomplishment

Figure 1-1. Risk Assessment Matrix

c. Chain of Command. Safety demands total chain-of-command involvement in planning, preparing, executing, and evaluating training. Responsibilities of the chain of command include—

(1) Commanders.

(a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.

(b) Specify the risk you will accept to accomplish the mission.

(c) Select risk reductions provided by the staff.

(d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.

(e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.

(2) Staff.

(a) Assist the commander in assessing risks and developing risk reduction options for training.

(b) Integrate risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards, and performance measures.

(c) Eliminate unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.

(d) Assess safety performance during training.

(e) Evaluate safety performance during AARs.

(3) Subordinate leaders.

(a) Apply consistently effective risk management concepts and methods to the operations they lead.

(b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.

(4) Individual soldiers.

(a) Report unsafe conditions and acts, and correct the situation when possible.

(b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.

(c) Take responsibility for personal safety.

(d) Work as a team member.

(e) Modify your own risk behavior.

d. Fratricide. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury, or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide prevention is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment and risk management are mechanisms used to control the incidence of fratricide.

(1) Causes of fratricide. The primary causes of fratricide are—

(a) Direct-fire control plan failures. These failures result when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.

(b) Land navigation failures. These failures result when units stray out of sector, report incorrect locations, or become disoriented.

(c) Combat identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited-visibility conditions.

(d) Inadequate control measures. These occur when units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures that are necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events.

(e) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(f) Weapons errors. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives or hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(g) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance (UXO), unmarked or unrecorded minefields, scatterable mines (SCATMINEs), and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, record, remove, or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

(2) Results. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the ability of a unit to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences:

(a) Loss of confidence in unit leadership.

(b) Increase of self-doubt among leaders.

(c) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(d) Oversupervision of units.

(e) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(f) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(g) Loss of initiative.

(h) Disrupted operations.

(i) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease and, if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

Step 1. Identify Any Hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during the analysis of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). This requires the identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

Step 2. Assess the Hazards. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-2). Consider the severity of environmental degradation when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low using the environmental risk assessment matrix.

Environmental Risk Assessment Work Sheet						
Environmental Area:					**Rating:**	
Unit Operations	**Risk Impact**					
Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0

Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form						
Unit Operation Environmental Issues	**Movement of Heavy Vehicles/ Systems**	**Movement of Personnel and Light Vehicles/ Systems**	**Assembly Area Activities**	**Field Maintenance of Equipment**	**Garrison Maintenance of Equipment**	**Risk Rating**
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous material/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threatened/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						

Risk Categories			
Category	**Range**	**Environmental Damage**	**Decision Maker**
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate level
High	118-149	Significant	Division commander
Extremely high	150-175	Severe	MACOM commander

Figure 1-2. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix

Step 3. Make Environmental Risk Decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

Step 4. Brief the Chain of Command. Brief the chain of command (to include the installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

Step 5. Implement Controls. Implement environmental protection measures into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

Step 6. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental-protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe the standards that must be met for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels, and they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are normally

conducted by a HQ that is two levels above the evaluated unit. See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard, and then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small-group training is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators, but evaluations should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during the exercises (usually after the completion of a major subordinate task). This is a proven technique that allows the correction of performance shortcomings, while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. Feedback. Recommendations for improvement of this ARTEP MTP are requested. Feedback will help to ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please make your comments on DA Form 2028 or use the questionnaire provided at the end of this MTP and send to the address reflected in the preface.

CHAPTER 2

Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit personnel. The mission identification table listed in Figure 2-1 provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table Mission Title
Conduct general engineer operations
Support engineer combat operations with manned engineer equipment
Sustain unit operations
Conduct sustainment engineering operations
Defend the unit
Conduct unit survivability operations

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the mission and its supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate battlefield operating system (BOS), indicated by an X in the matrix. The BOSs that are used in this matrix are defined in United States Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) Pamphlet (Pam) 11-9. A specific mission is trained by using the collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

Collective Tasks		GENERAL ENGINEERING	SUPPORT ENGR COMBAT OPNS	SUSTAIN OPERATIONS	SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING
Develop Intelligence					
05-2-0408	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	X		X	X
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance	X	X	X	
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment			X	
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X		X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver					
05-2-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Company)	X		X	
05-2-0908	Conduct Quartering Party Operations			X	
05-3-0038	Disable Lines of Communication (LOC) or an Airfield		X		
05-3-0914	Prepare Equipment for Air Movement Operations	X		X	
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire				
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)				
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)			X	

Collective Tasks		GENERAL ENGINEERING	SUPPORT ENGR COMBAT OPNS	SUSTAIN OPERATIONS	SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy	X		X	X
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush			X	
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March			X	
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically				
Protect the Force					
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey			X	
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions				
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack				
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike				
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area				
03-3-C209.05-T01A	React to Smoke Operations				
03-3-C222.05-T01A	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C223.05-T01A	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack				
03-3-C224.05-T01A	Conduct Operational Decontamination			X	
03-3-C226.05-T01A	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area			X	
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack			X	
05-3-0113	Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield			X	
05-3-0115.05-R01A	Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield			X	
05-3-0116	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield			X	
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles	X	X	X	
05-3-0767	Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment	X	X	X	X
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security	X		X	
05-5-0302	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions			X	
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position				

Collective Tasks		GENERAL ENGINEERING	SUPPORT ENGR COMBAT OPNS	SUSTAIN OPERATIONS	SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)			X	
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures			X	
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures			X	
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms			X	
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment					
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies			X	
05-2-0735	Conduct Area Damage Control (ADC) Operations	X	X		
05-2-1007	Conduct Administrative Operations			X	
05-2-1024	Conduct Combat Refueling Operations			X	
05-3-0762	Conduct Clearing, Grubbing, and Stripping Operations	X	X		X
05-3-1014	Conduct Petroleum, Oils, and Lubricants (POL) Support Operations			X	
05-3-1115	Maintain the Authorized Stockage List (ASL)			X	
05-3-1125	Conduct Direct-Support Maintenance			X	
05-3-1600	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)	X		X	
08-2-0003.05-T01A	Treat Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)			X	X
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)			X	
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	X		X	
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions			X	
10-2-0317.05-T01A	Provide Food Service Support			X	
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations			X	
10-2-0320.05-T01A	Provide Company Supply Support			X	
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)			X	
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System			X	

Collective Tasks		GENERAL ENGINEERING	SUPPORT ENGR COMBAT OPNS	SUSTAIN OPERATIONS	SUSTAINMENT ENGINEERING
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)			X	
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations			X	X
Exercise Command and Control					
05-1-0721	Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X	X	X
05-2-0035	Control a Base in a Base Cluster			X	
05-2-0410	Manage Engineer Reconnaissance Operations			X	
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures	X	X	X	X
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)	X		X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X		X	
12-2-0321.05-T01A	Maintain Company Strength			X	
12-2-0338.05-T01A	Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability			X	

Collective Tasks		UNIT DEFENSE	UNIT SURVIVABILITY
Develop Intelligence			
05-2-0408	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	X	X
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance		
19-3-3105.05-T01A	Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X	X
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver			
05-2-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Company)		
05-2-0908	Conduct Quartering Party Operations	X	X
05-3-0038	Disable Lines of Communication (LOC) or an Airfield		
05-3-0914	Prepare Equipment for Air Movement Operations	X	
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire	X	X
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)	X	X
07-2-1136.05-T02A	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy	X	X
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush	X	X
07-3-1123.05-T01A	Conduct a Tactical Road March	X	X
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically	X	X
Protect the Force			
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey	X	X
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X	X
03-3-C202.05-T01A	Prepare for a Chemical Attack	X	X

Collective Tasks		UNIT DEFENSE	UNIT SURVIVABILITY
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack	X	X
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X	X
03-3-C206.05-T01A	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	X	X
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X	X
03-3-C209.05-T01A	React to Smoke Operations	X	X
03-3-C222.05-T01A	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X
03-3-C223.05-T01A	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X
03-3-C224.05-T01A	Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X
03-3-C226.05-T01A	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X	X
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack	X	X
05-3-0113	Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield	X	X
05-3-0115.05-R01A	Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X	X
05-3-0116	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield	X	X
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles	X	X
05-3-0767	Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment		
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security	X	X
05-5-0302	Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions	X	X
07-2-0414.05-T01A	Establish a Company Defensive Position	X	X
09-2-0337.05-T01A	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)	X	X
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures	X	X
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	X	X

Collective Tasks		UNIT DEFENSE	UNIT SURVIVABILITY
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X	X
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures	X	X
Perform CSS and Sustainment			
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies	X	X
05-2-0735	Conduct Area Damage Control (ADC) Operations		
05-2-1007	Conduct Administrative Operations		
05-2-1024	Conduct Combat Refueling Operations	X	X
05-3-0762	Conduct Clearing, Grubbing, and Stripping Operations		
05-3-1014	Conduct Petroleum, Oils, and Lubricants (POL) Support Operations		
05-3-1115	Maintain the Authorized Stockage List (ASL)	X	
05-3-1125	Conduct Direct-Support Maintenance		
05-3-1600	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)	X	
08-2-0003.05-T01A	Treat Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)		X
08-2-C316.05-T01A	Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel)		X
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	X	X
08-2-R315.05-T01A	Perform Field Sanitation Functions	X	X
10-2-0317.05-T01A	Provide Food Service Support		

Collective Tasks		UNIT DEFENSE	UNIT SURVIVABILITY
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations	X	X
10-2-0320.05-T01A	Provide Company Supply Support		X
11-5-0050.05-T01A	Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)		X
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System		X
19-3-3106.05-T01A	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X	X
43-2-0001.05-T01A	Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations	X	X
Exercise Command and Control			
05-1-0721	Plan/Control Augmentation Support	X	X
05-2-0035	Control a Base in a Base Cluster	X	X
05-2-0410	Manage Engineer Reconnaissance Operations	X	X
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures	X	X
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)	X	X
11-5-1102.05-T01A	Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	X	X
12-2-0321.05-T01A	Maintain Company Strength		X
12-2-0338.05-T01A	Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability		X

Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions

CHAPTER 3

Mission Outlines/Training Plans

3-1. General. The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their support tasks. Each outline provides the trainer with a diagram of the unit missions, sample FTXs and/or STXs, and the collective tasks that comprise them.

3-2. Mission Outlines. Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how task training contributes to the ability of the unit to perform its missions. The mission outlines, Tables 3-1 through 3-5, provide the commander with a visual outline of his unit missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

Table 3-1. Sample Countermobility Mission Outline

ENGINEER PLATOON COUNTERMOBILITY	
Task Number	**Task Title**
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0307	Construct a Log Obstacle
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
07-1-1923.05-T01A	React to Indirect Fire
10-2-0319.05-T01A	Receive Airdrop Resupply
71-2-0326.05-T01A	Perform Risk Management Procedures

Table 3-2. Sample General Engineering Mission Outline

ENGINEER COMPANY GENERAL ENGINEERING	
Task Number	**Task Title**
05-2-0726	Conduct Dump Truck Hauling Operations
05-3-0313	Construct Revetments
05-3-0402.05-R01A	Perform a Route Classification
05-3-0611	Construct/Repair a Bridge Abutment
05-3-0710	Assemble and Install Culverts
05-3-0765	Construct or Repair a Sewerage System
05-3-0778	Construct or Repair a Steel Frame Preengineered Structure
05-3-0784	Construct/Repair Headwalls
05-3-0787	Construct/Repair a Wood Frame Structure
05-3-0789	Construct/Repair a Concrete Structure
05-3-0790	Construct/Repair Electrical Utilities
05-3-0791	Construct/Repair a Water Distribution System
05-3-0792	Install Coupled Pipeline
05-3-0904	Establish Jobsite Security
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)

Table 3-3. Sample Mobility Mission Outline

ENGINEER PLATOON MOBILITY	
Task Number	**Task Title**
05-3-0114	Conduct Breaching Operations
05-3-0404	Conduct a River Crossing Site Reconnaissance
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-0609	Operate River Crossing Sites
05-3-0603	Prepare an Expedient Ford
05-3-0767	Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C208.05-T01A	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area

Table 3-4. Sample Perform Survivability Construction Mission Outline

ENGINEER PLATOON PERFORM SURVIVABILITY CONSTRUCTION	
Task Number	**Task Title**
05-3-0304	Construct Vehicle Fighting Positions
05-3-0305	Construct Vehicle Protective Positions
05-3-0306	Construct a Tank Ditch
05-3-0312	Construct Bunkers and Shelters

Table 3-5. Sample Unit Survivability/Unit Defense Mission Outline

ENGINEER COMPANY UNIT SURVIVABILITY/UNIT DEFENSE	
Task Number	**Task Title**
03-3-C203.05-T01A	Respond to a Chemical Attack
03-3-C205.05-T01A	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
11-5-0121.05-T01A	Provide a Field Cable or Wire System
44-1-C220.05-T01A	Use Passive Air Defense Measures
44-1-C221.05-T01A	Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft

CHAPTER 4

Training Exercise

4-1. General. Training exercises are used to train and practice the performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains a sample FTX. It is designed to assist in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the FTX by exercise number, title, and page number.

Table 4-1. FTX Exercises

Exercise Number	Exercise Title	Page
FTX 5-1-E0001	Conduct Mobility Operations	4-1

4-2. Field Training Exercise. The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the unit to train its critical wartime missions. It provides a logical sequence for the performance of the tasks previously trained in the STXs.

4-3. Situational Training Exercise. STXs are short, scenario-driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. STXs provide the information for training the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. STXs—

a. Provide repetitive training of missions.

b. Allow the training to focus on identified weaknesses.

c. Allow the unit to practice the mission STX before conducting a higher-echelon FTX.

d. Save time by providing most of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.

ENGINEER COMPANY
FTX
5-1-E0001
CONDUCT MOBILITY OPERATIONS

1. Objective. This sample exercise trains collective, leader, and individual tasks in the company operation, Conduct Mobility Operations.

2. Interface. This exercise supports the task force (TF) requirement to conduct combat operations.

3. Training Enhancers.

a. The training matrix in Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the company mission. Training that will improve its ability to perform its mission are—

(1) Planning, controlling, and coordinating mobility operations. Training may be conducted in garrison and local training areas by one of the following methods:

(a) Classroom instruction.

(b) A map exercise (MAPEX) combined with a sand table exercise.

(c) A command post exercise (CPX) conducted in garrison.

(d) A command field exercise (CFX) conducted in a field environment.

(e) A tactical exercise without troops (TEWT).

(f) A communications exercise (COMEX).

(g) Simulations and games.

(2) Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in the following activities:

(a) Aggressive unit sports and physical-fitness programs.

(b) Leader and individual confidence courses.

(c) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.

(d) Awareness of the unit heritage.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order (WO) and ends upon the compilations of area damage control (ADC) activities. Figure 4-1 illustrates the general scenario of the exercise. Table 4-2 is a suggested scenario and Figure 4-2 is the movement order for the scenario.

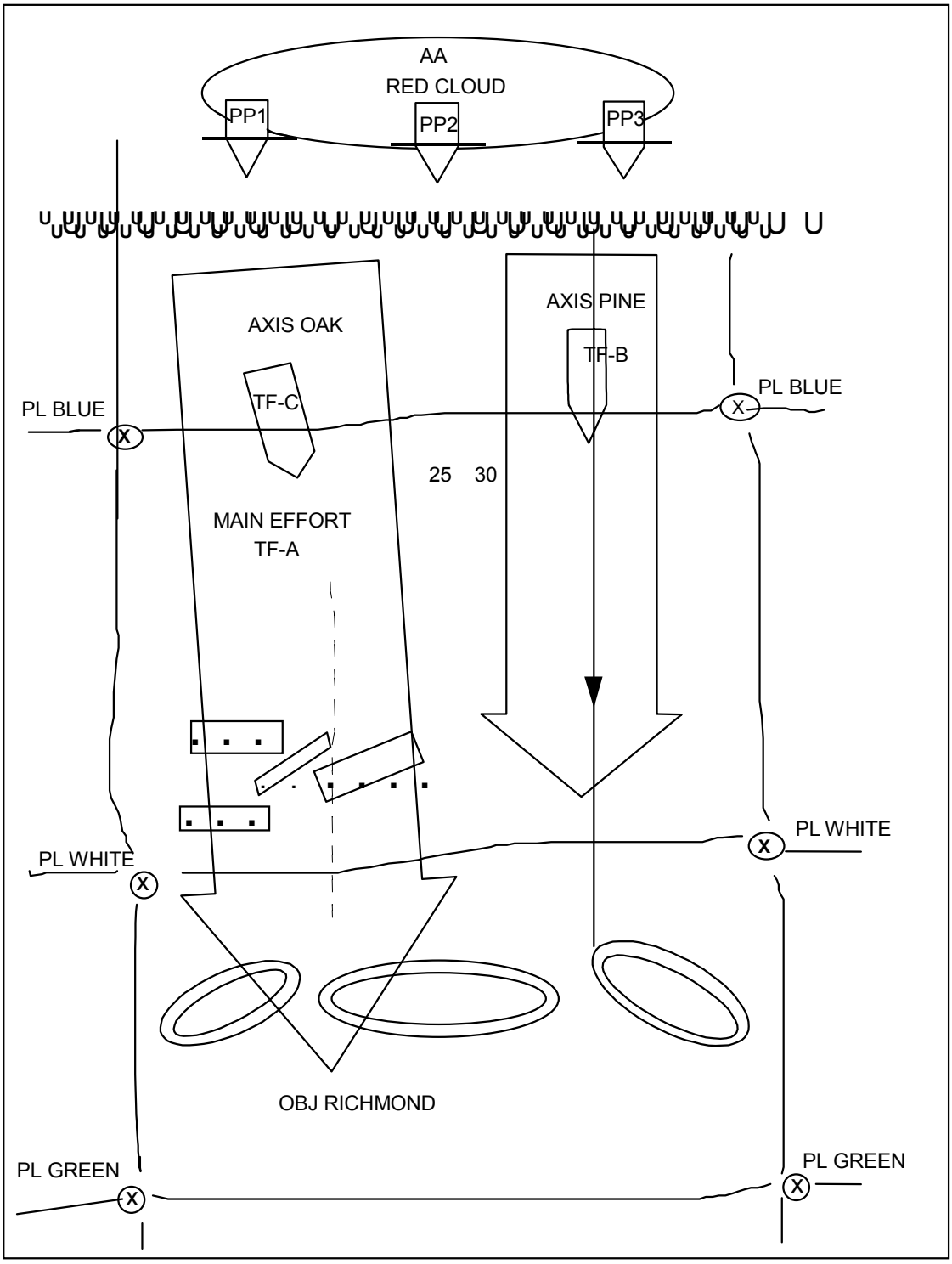


Figure 4-1. General Scenario FTX

Table 4-2. Sample Suggested Scenario

Event	Action	Estimated Time
	Module 1	
1	Receive a Bridge WO	15 minutes
2	Receive a Bridge Movement Order	30 minutes
3	Plan and Issue a Movement Order	2.5 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	6 hours
5	Occupy an AA	4 hours
6	Receive a Brigade WO	15 minutes
7	Receive a Brigade OPORD	2 hours
8	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
	Module 2	
9	Conduct Precombat Operations	20 hours
	Plan/Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance	8 hours
	Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	4 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Estimate	3 hours
	Prepare an Engineer Annex	1 hour
10	Conduct an AAR	1 hour
	Module 3	
11	Monitor the Conduct of the Attack, and Coordinate and Issue FRAGOs, as appropriate	9.5 hours
	Module 4	
12	Move to the AA	4 hours
13	Conduct a Final AAR	2 hours
*	Defend Against an Air Attack	
*	Control Combat Formations	
*	Prepare an OPORD	
*	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	
*	Manage Battlefield Stress	
*	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	
*	Perform PMCS	
*	Operate a Net Control Station	
*	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel, Voice Radio Station	
	ENDEX	
	Total time:	**69 hours**

*** These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.**

Movement Order

1. SITUATION. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn to vicinity NK 403087. It is being reinforced and is preparing to counterattack. The division is moving to occupy an assembly area (AA) in preparation of combat operations.

2. MISSION. The 25th Brigade moves by tactical road march via route Monroe, commencing 011600 hours to AA vicinity NK 243567. The order of march is TF A, TF B, and TF C. The interval between serials is 30 minutes. Close on the AA no later than 01900 hours.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of Movement. TF A will be the lead element with assistance from the military police (MP) for traffic control. TF B will follow 30 minutes after TF A. Brigade HQ will follow 30 minutes after TF B. TF C will follow 30 minutes after brigade HQ.

b. Tasks to Subordinate Units. The MPs will provide traffic control for the brigade movement.

c. Detailed Timings. None.

d. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Start point (SP) NK 243567 at 011600 hours.

(2) Route Monroe command post (CP) is at NK 248560.

(3) Quartering party is the 25th Battalion.

(4) Vehicle markings are according to the unit SOP.

(5) Additional information, as required.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Per the unit SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

(1) Current signal operation instructions (SOI) are in effect.

(2) Visual signals according to the unit SOP.

Figure 4-2. Movement Order

4. General Situation.

a. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear, is being reinforced, and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest intelligence summary (INTSUM)

indicates that the enemy may have a company-size strong point in the brigade sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. This exercise is conducted under all environments during both day and night operations. The company is operating in an arid environment. The company will operate under threat of NBC attacks, ground or air attacks, indirect fire, and electronic warfare (EW).

c. This exercise is conducted under Threat Level I, II, and/or III attacks.

d. The company should be prepared to relocate at least every three to four days.

e. The unit should be prepared to move by echelons while continuing to provide support to the assigned area.

5. Special Situation.

a. The lead TF encounters an unexpected obstacle that prevents bypass. Enemy contact has been made. The brigade commander gives the following fragmentary order (FRAGO):

"TF, conduct breaching operations and continue the attack."

b. After completing the breaches, the TFs receive fire from an enemy position and encounter complex obstacles that prevent bypass. The attack is stalled. The unit is ordered to move in.

6. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and observers/controllers. The battalion commander or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) who will be the trainer and the primary evaluator can conduct this task. At least one other observer/controller (O/C) is required for each engineer platoon and OPFOR platoon involved in this FTX.

b. Opposing forces.

(1) OPFOR is required for the exercise to simulate Threat Level II and III activities.

(2) OPFOR should have specific missions and be controlled whenever used.

(3) The Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES) can be used, or the trainer and O/C can assess the damage to equipment and personnel casualties.

c. Vehicles and communications. Vehicles and communications equipment organic to the unit are used. Each trainer and O/C needs a vehicle and a radio. Radios are also required for OPFOR vehicles during mounted operations.

d. Maneuver area. Depending on the local training area, an area with a minimum dimension of 15 by 6 kilometers for the hasty attack is desirable. The terrain should offer multiple covered and concealed approaches to the objective area. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or "school" solution does not allow an evaluation of the unit ability to conduct a terrain analysis and to select an appropriate course of action.

e. Consolidated support requirements. Company support requirements can be calculated by adding the total of the requirements for each participating subordinate element. See Table 4-3.

Table 4-3. Consolidated Support Requirements for FTX 5-1-E0001

Ammunition	DODIC	Estimated Basic Load	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolitions) or 6 per squad	
Demolitions (See the note below.)			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
Other Items			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
Class IV			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
MILES Equipment	**Company**	**Evaluators**	**OPFOR**
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to use) during the FTX.			

7. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. Table 4-4 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 that are used to evaluate the FTX.

Table 4-4. T&EOs Used in Evaluating FTX 5-1-E0001

Task Title	Task Number
Disseminate Combat Information and Intelligence (Battalion)	34-1-2005.05-T01A
Maintain Operations Security	71-2-0332.05-T01A
Prepare an Obstacle Plan (Battalion)	05-1-0001
Control a Hasty Gap Crossing	05-1-0500
Plan Breaching Operations	05-1-0520
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	05-2-0301
Prepare for a Chemical Attack	3-2-C202.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Actions	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations	43-2-0001.05-T01A
Treat Casualties	08-2-0003.05-T01A
Perform Field-Sanitation Measures	08-2-R315.05-T01A
Transport Casualties	08-2-C316.05-T01A
Provide Food-Service Support	10-2-0317.05-T01A
Provide Company Supply Support	10-2-0320.05-T01A
Process Personnel and Administrative Action	12-1-0406.05-T01A
Prepare an Engineer Annex	05-1-0003
Prepare an Operations Order	05-1-0008
Perform an Engineer Battlefield Assessment	05-1-0027
Report Obstacle Information	05-1-0025
Report Engineer Information	05-1-0026
Analyze Battlefield Information	05-1-0415
Control Combined-Arms Breaching	05-1-0048
Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures	05-2-1018
Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	11-3-0214.05-T01A
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT)	11-5-0050.05-T01A
Establish External Communications	11-5-0121.05-T01A
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net	11-5-1102.05-T01A
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures	08-2-R303.05-T01A
Report Casualties	12-1-0403.05-T01A
Conduct Replacement Operations	12-1-0405.05-T01A

CHAPTER 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

The T&EOs for the unit are listed in Figure 5-1. The mission-to-collective task matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

Develop Intelligence
Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance (05-2-0408) 5-3
Perform a Technical Reconnaissance (05-3-0412) 5-6
Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A) 5-9
Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A) 5-11

Deploy/Conduct Maneuver
Report Obstacle Information (Company) (05-2-0025) 5-14
Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-2-0908) 5-16
Disable Lines of Communication (LOC) or an Airfield (05-3-0038) 5-19
Clear Obstacles Using Demolitions (05-3-0209) 5-23
Prepare Equipment for Air Movement Operations (05-3-0914) 5-25
React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A) 5-27
Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A) 5-29
Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A) 5-34
Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A) 5-37
React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A) 5-41
Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A) 5-43
Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A) 5-46

Protect the Force
Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A) 5-49
Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A) 5-52
Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A) 5-54
Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A) 5-56
Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A) 5-58
Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A) 5-60
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A) 5-62
React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A) 5-64
Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A) 5-66
Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A) 5-68
Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A) 5-70
Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A) 5-74
Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911) 5-76
Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-3-0113) 5-79
Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-0115.05-R01A) 5-82
Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-0116) 5-87
Construct Wire Obstacles (05-3-0303) 5-90
Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment (05-3-0767) 5-93
Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-0904.05-R01A) 5-97
Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-0302) 5-100
Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A) 5-103
React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A) 5-107
Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A) 5-109
Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A) 5-111
Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A) 5-113

Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A) 5-116

Perform CSS and Sustainment

Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies (05-2-0042) 5-118
Conduct Area Damage Control (ADC) Operations (05-2-0735) 5-120
Conduct Administrative Operations (05-2-1007) 5-123
Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-1024) 5-126
Conduct Clearing, Grubbing, and Stripping Operations (05-3-0762) 5-128
Conduct Petroleum, Oils, and Lubricants (POL) Support Operations (05-3-1014) 5-131
Maintain the Authorized Stockage List (ASL) (05-3-1115) 5-133
Conduct Direct-Support Maintenance (05-3-1125) 5-135
Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC) (05-3-1600) 5-137
Treat Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-0003.05-T01A) 5-139
Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A) 5-142
Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A) 5-145
Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A) 5-147
Provide Food Service Support (10-2-0317.05-T01A) 5-150
Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A) 5-153
Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A) 5-155
Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A) 5-157
Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A) 5-159
Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A) 5-161
Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A) 5-163

Exercise Command and Control

Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721) 5-166
Control a Base in a Base Cluster (05-2-0035) 5-168
Manage Engineer Reconnaissance Operations (05-2-0410) 5-170
Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-1218) 5-172
Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008) 5-176
Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A) 5-178
Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A) 5-182
Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A) 5-184

Figure 5-1. List of T&EO's

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Operations Section

TASK: Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance (05-2-0408)
(FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer company plans and directs an engineer reconnaissance of a designated area. The area is secure, but enemy contact is possible. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company plans and directs platoon reconnaissance missions to gather sufficient information to fulfill the reconnaissance objectives. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The company plans the reconnaissance mission as defined in the battalion operation order (OPORD). a. Gathered supporting intelligence data, such as map products and aerial photos. **NOTE: Digital units have access to Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) and All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) products to evaluate the plan and to assist in conducting the reconnaissance.** b. Established reconnaissance objectives, the main supply route (MSR), obstacle locations, general trafficability, decontamination points, and bivouac sites. c. Identified the platoon to perform the mission. d. Established the time, distance, and size of the zone or route to reconnoiter.		
* 2. The company commander determines the reconnaissance method. a. Selected route reconnaissance when time was a critical factor. b. Selected zone reconnaissance when cross-country trafficability was important. c. Selected an area reconnaissance when the mission required specific information about a defined area. **NOTE: An area reconnaissance is more thorough and time-consuming than a zone reconnaissance.**		
* 3. The company commander briefs the platoon on the reconnaissance mission. a. Conveyed the objective of the reconnaissance. b. Defined the area or route to cover. c. Described the methods of reconnaissance. d. Directed a hasty or deliberate reconnaissance. e. Provided additional guidance (such as, attention to fords, bridges, bivouac sites, and contaminated areas). f. Ensured that checkpoints were positioned for progress reports, assistance, and communications checks.		
* 4. The element leader ensures that unit members have the minimum-essential material needed to conduct the mission.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Ensured that unit members had a map of the area, overlay paper, a compass, and a tape measure. b. Ensured that unit members received the appropriate forms: Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1248, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, and 1711-R. c. Ensured that a secure mode, communications check radio was on hand.		
* 5. The company operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) reviews the reconnaissance report. a. Ensured that the platoon accomplished the objective. b. Ensured that members recorded dimensions (in meters) on the overlay; for example, the road width, bridges, overhead clearance, constrictions to travel way, fords, tunnels, or underpasses. c. Ensured that members recorded and annotated critical terrain features and obstacles using the appropriate symbols on the overlay at their geographical location (such as, slopes, curves, fords, ferries, bridges, reduction in travel way, and constrictions).		
* 6. The company operations NCO updates the company terrain analysis and overlay. He prepares to brief the commander on the results of the reconnaissance mission.		
* 7. The company commander briefs the battalion commander and staff on the mission. He submits all reports to the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) within the time constraints. **NOTE: Digital units can submit reports using digital means to assist the commander in the decision-making process. Appropriate DA forms are submitted at a later time according to the Standardization Agreement (STANAG) and the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0410	Manage Engineer Reconnaissance Operations
05-2-0413	Conduct Engineer Intelligence Collection
05-3-0405	Perform a Target Reconnaissance
05-3-0407	Perform an Engineer Reconnaissance

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Equipment Sections

TASK: Perform a Technical Reconnaissance (05-3-0412)

(FM 5-170)	(DA FORM 1248)	(DA FORM 1249)
(DA FORM 1250)	(DA FORM 1251)	(DA FORM 1252)
(FM 3-21.71)	(FM 5-34)	(FM 7-7)
(FM 7-8)		

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. The leader receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a technical reconnaissance to locate obstructions along a proposed movement route. Digital units have completed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The area is secured, but enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The reconnaissance team conducts a technical reconnaissance to verify the technical data along the main supply route (MSR). All Department of the Army (DA) forms contain the required information. There are no time restraints, unless otherwise specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a technical reconnaissance. **NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information from higher headquarters (HQ) through All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products.** a. Coordinated through the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) or the task force (TF) engineer for a ground or aviation security force. b. Requested an enemy situation brief from the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2). c. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance including the start points (SPs), the release points (RPs), and the route. d. Reviewed the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). e. Met the commander's intent and requirements for the area or target of the reconnaissance. f. Briefed subelement leaders on the reconnaissance mission using the five-paragraph order format. g. Conducted troop-leading procedures. h. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). i. Obtained the required equipment, forms, and material for the reconnaissance.		
2. The reconnaissance team starts movement on the technical reconnaissance. a. Moved along the specified route. b. Maintained communications with the supported element.		
3. The reconnaissance team conducts a bridge classification reconnaissance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Gathered the required information to complete the bridge reconnaissance report. b. Completed the bridge reconnaissance report with the required information. 4. The reconnaissance team conducts a ferry reconnaissance. a. Gathered the required information to complete the ferry reconnaissance report. b. Completed the ferry reconnaissance report with the required information. 5. The reconnaissance team conducts a ford reconnaissance. a. Gathered the required information to complete the ford reconnaissance report. b. Completed the ford reconnaissance report with the required information. 6. The reconnaissance team conducts a road reconnaissance. a. Gathered the required information to complete the road reconnaissance report. b. Completed the road reconnaissance report with the required information. 7. The reconnaissance team conducts a tunnel reconnaissance or an underpass reconnaissance. a. Gathered the required information to complete the tunnel reconnaissance report. b. Completed the tunnel reconnaissance report with the required information. **NOTE: Not all types of reconnaissance may be applicable to the commander's intent or requirements.** 8. The reconnaissance team starts movement to the assembly area (AA). **NOTE: Digital units send reports, orders, and digital overlays to update the common operational picture (COP). Appropriate DA forms are submitted according to standardization agreement (STANAG) requirements and the unit SOP.** * 9. The S3, the S2, or the TF engineer debriefs the element leader and the reconnaissance team. The unit SOP or TACSOP determines the requirements for the debriefing. *10. The element leader provides completed reconnaissance forms to higher headquarters (HQ) or the requesting unit according to the SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-196-2101	Determine the Percent of Slope
052-196-2103	Determine Gap Width
052-196-3030	Prepare a Road Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3031	Prepare a Tunnel Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3032	Prepare a Ford Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3033	Prepare a Bridge Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3035	Prepare an Engineer Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance
052-196-4022	Determine the Rapid Field Classification of a Fixed Bridge
052-198-2007	Classify Vehicles Using Expedient Methods

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19.40)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy equipment and documents have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element processes all captured equipment and documents based on disposition instructions and within the time standards established by higher headquarters (HQ). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element tags all captured equipment and documents. a. Described the type of equipment and documents, such as maps, photos, rifles, and radios. b. Annotated the date and time of capture. c. Provided the place (grid coordinates) of capture. d. Noted the capturing unit. e. Furnished the circumstances of the capture. f. Identified the prisoner's name on the tag if the items were taken from enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).		
* 2. The element leader reports the capture of equipment and documents to higher HQ. a. Described the type of equipment and documents. b. Stated the date and time of capture. c. Identified the capturing unit. d. Furnished the place (grid coordinates) of the capture.		
* 3. The element leader disposes of the equipment and documents according to the guidance received from higher HQ. a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the equipment. b. Evacuated the documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-2-0332.05-T01A)
(AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 24-33)
(FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-19.30)
(FM 34-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is operating where the enemy can detect it. The enemy can employ electronic-warfare (EW) measures and air and ground reconnaissance elements. The element can also use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, intentions, and any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI) or from surprising the elements main body. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Leaders check or perform information security measures. a. Disseminated the information on a need-to-know basis. b. Prohibited fraternization with civilians. c. Conducted alerts, deployment preparations, and loading operations to minimize detection. d. Ensured that maps contained only the minimum-essential information. e. Conducted inspections and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in their personal materials, such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs. f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.		
2. The element performs camouflage discipline. a. Concealed and camouflaged with natural materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground or air observation. b. Moved on covered and concealed routes. c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material, such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick. d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.		
3. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater. a. Ensured that the foliage was not stripped near the unit position. b. Camouflaged earth berms. c. Ensured that the camouflage nets were erected. d. Evaded crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads. e. Erased any tracks leading into the positions. f. Ensured that vehicles that were parked in the shadows were moved as the shadows shifted.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Replaced and replenished the camouflage. h. Evaded movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection. 4. The element employs the company net control station (NCS) and enforces communications security (COMSEC). a. Enforced signal operation instructions (SOI) and signal supplemental instructions (SSI) procedures, such as challenges, authentications decoding, and call signs and frequencies. Ensured that the monitored traffic did not reveal information to the enemy. b. Employed approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures. c. Followed COMSEC procedures, such as keeping transmissions short, using the lowest possible power settings, using directional antennas, changing transmission patterns, and maintaining radio silence. d. Followed procedures for operations during jamming. e. Made maximum use of the messenger and wire service. f. Used visual signals according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). 5. The element employs physical security measures. a. Employed observation posts (OPs). b. Employed counterreconnaissance patrols. c. Followed stand-to procedures. d. Employed mines and obstacles, when permitted. e. Tied in with adjacent units for coordination and fire. f. Used the challenge and password. g. Limited access into the area of the unit. h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents. i. Picked up litter. j. Employed air guards. * 6. All leaders enforce noise and light discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Equipment Sections

TASK: Report Obstacle Information (Company) (05-2-0025)
(FM 3-34.2) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)
(FM 5-100) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives obstacle and scatterable-mine (SCATMINE) information from subordinate elements and the battalion. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Higher headquarters (HQ) and subordinate units have accurate and timely information on obstacles in the area of operations (AO). Digital units send reports, orders, and messages and gain intelligence information using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The location of obstacles and other reports are submitted through the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) to update the common operational picture (COP), the situational awareness (SA), and the obstacle overlays. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element receives obstacle information that is required by the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). **NOTE: Digital units can send reports and update the digital overlay to provide current SA.** a. Received a status report, called an obstacle document (OBSDOC), that gave the serial number, type, location (8-digit coordinate), progress, completion date of obstacles, and the date and time the report was generated. b. Received a SCATMINE record or a SCATMINE warning report. c. Received a map sheet(s). d. Received information on the situation of the enemy. e. Received additional assets or required equipment. **NOTE: Notify the supply section and the platoons of the type and quantity of assets or equipment required.** f. Received information on the execution of the obstacle (time, unit, type, location, and serial number). g. Received information on the obstacle hand-off (time, unit, type, location, and serial number).		
2. The element reports obstacle information to the supported unit and higher engineer command.		
* 3. The officer in charge (OIC) or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) reports to the commander on the type of obstacles; the unit responsible for emplacement, progress, completion date, hand-off, and execution of the obstacles; the enemy situation; and the execution and plotting of the commander's guidance on scatterable mines.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. The OIC or the NCOIC briefs the team on the type, serial number, location, emplacement progress, and possible hand-off of obstacles; the relocation of material; the emplacement and execution of SCATMINEs; and the unit and/or location of tasked elements, if assistance is required. * 5. The OIC or the NCOIC reports to the supported or parent unit (based on command or support relationship) on the requirements for material, equipment, recovery vehicles, maintenance support, obstacle material, communications equipment, mission location, a map sheet(s), and platoons needing assistance. 6. The operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) records obstacle information from the platoons and the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). a. Updated the SA and obstacle overlays with team locations; emplaced, executed, and handed off obstacles; intended and executed SCATMINE targets; and encountered obstacle locations. b. Maintained an accurate status of emplaced, executed, handed off, and encountered obstacles, and intended and executed SCATMINE targets, by maintaining an updated and current digital SA OBSDOC. c. Maintained files of sent reports. d. Coordinated with the battalion S3 to provide updates on the status of obstacles emplaced by the company, obstacle execution, SCATMINEs, obstacle enhancement, and any required assistance. * 7. The element leader briefs the supported commander or higher engineer command on SCATMINEs, reserve targets, and other obstacles, to include their status, location, self-destruct times, dimensions, delivery means, and hand-off.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections

TASK: Conduct Quartering Party Operations (05-2-0908)
(FM 3-90.1) (FM 101-5) (FM 20-32)
(FM 5-10) (FM 5-170) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, a unit is directed to move to a new location and establish an assembly area (AA). Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The quartering party departs ahead of the main body of the unit and completes all tasks in the new AA before the main body arrives. The unit moves all personnel and equipment to the assigned position within the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader organizes the quartering party. a. Selected a noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC). b. Selected a security element or coordinated for security to be provided by the supported maneuver unit. c. Selected subordinate-element representatives according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). d. Organized a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance party from the NCOIC, the security element, and the subordinate-element representatives to satisfy the threat conditions. e. Conducted troop-leading procedures. f. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). g. Reviewed the unit SOP and tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). h. Conducted risk management and safety briefings according to the unit SOP or TACSOP.		
2. The quartering party conducts rehearsals on minesweeping operations, actions on contact for the security teams, and movement guide procedures. **NOTE: Conduct a rehearsal using one of the following rehearsal types: the confirmation brief, the back brief, the combined arms rehearsal, the battle drill, or the SOP rehearsal.**		
* 3. The quartering party leader conducts a map reconnaissance identifying the start point (SP), potential ambush sites, checkpoints (CPs), rest stops, and the AA. **NOTE: The route used by the quartering party can be the same as the route used by the main body of the unit, as long as security is maintained along the route. If security is not maintained, the main body should conduct a route clearance to the new AA.**		
4. The quartering party prepares the vehicles for the convoy.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment. b. Loaded vehicles according to the load plan. c. Prepared troop-carrying vehicles for combat survivability by covering the floors with a double layer of sandbags. d. Maintained a guard force to prevent theft and sabotage.		
* 5. The quartering party leader briefs convoy personnel. a. Briefed the convoy route, to include the medical- and maintenance-support locations and the destination. b. Provided a strip map to each vehicle commander (or driver). **NOTE: Digital units input routes and checkpoints into the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System by using an overlay message and/or a long format message according to the unit TACSOP.** c. Briefed the prescribed march rate, the catch-up speed, and the distance between the vehicles. d. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures. e. Briefed limited-visibility movement procedures. f. Briefed the chain of command and radio frequency.		
6. The quartering party relocates to the new AA. a. Traveled separately from, and ahead of, the main body. b. Reported route limitations and other specified command interest items to the next higher element.		
7. The quartering party reconnoiters the area and notifies the commander of the conditions. **NOTE: Digital units update the enemy locations, mined areas, and NBC contaminated areas on the FBCB2 System to update the situational awareness (SA) and common operational picture (COP).** a. Reported the position of enemy forces. b. Located the areas containing mines, booby traps, and NBC contamination. c. Evaluated terrain conditions, to include trafficability, cover and concealment, and the availability of adequate routes into and out of the AA. d. Evaluated the communication system required for the AA.		
* 8. The quartering party leader notifies the commander of the condition of the area. a. Received orders and prepared the area for the main body (satisfactory conditions). b. Requested additional instructions from the next higher commander and moved to the alternate AA or found another location and repeated subtask 7 (unsatisfactory conditions).		
9. The quartering party prepares the area to receive the main body. a. Secured the area. b. Marked or removed any obstacles and mines. c. Organized the area, divided it into sectors for each unit, and selected locations for the command post. d. Improved and marked the entrances, exits, and internal routes. e. Marked vehicle positions.		
10. Each element representative from the quartering party guides his element, without delay, from the release point (RP) to the sector of that element of the AA (mounted, if possible).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
03-2-3008.05-T01A	Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey
03-3-C201.05-T01A	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
05-2-0911	Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Equipment Sections

TASK: Disable Lines of Communication (LOC) or an Airfield (05-3-0038)
(FM 5-250)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An element is conducting continuous tactical operations during darkness and daylight in all-weather conditions. The unit is given the mission to disable LOC or an airfield for a specified purpose and time. The unit uses available resources to complete the mission within the time limitation. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element disables LOC or an airfield and denies the use of them by opposing forces (OPFOR). The element causes partial or complete destruction using explosives and other available materials to create obstacles. Digital units send reports and update obstacle locations using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means and provide an updated common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader conducts troop-leading procedures.		
* 2. The platoon leader determines the most effective means to disable or destroy the target. a. Considered the time available. b. Incorporated command guidance. c. Evaluated available explosives. d. Evaluated the availability and location of local materials. e. Considered available personnel to complete the mission. f. Considered available organic equipment. g. Evacuated the area and bypasses. h. Evaluated the enemy location and activities. i. Considered the target location and accessibility.		
* 3. The platoon leader determines the extent of the required destruction. a. Selected partial destruction if the target was to be used by friendly forces in a counterattack or in future operations. b. Selected complete destruction if the target was not to be used by friendly forces or if the enemy had the capability and means to quickly repair the target. c. Considered the amount of time and materials needed for friendly forces to repair the damage.		
* 4. The platoon leader submits his plan to higher headquarters (HQ) for approval.		
5. The platoon disables ground transportation lines using explosives and other available equipment or materials.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Disabled bridges by cutting spans and creating a gap at least 19.9 meters long and destroying the abutment on the enemy side using cratering and breaching charges. b. Destroyed tunnels by placing charges in the demolition chambers or above the entrance to create a slide. c. Cratered roads at critical points where there were no easy bypasses (around curves, at the tops of hills, and in towns). d. Created an abatis using explosives or engineer tools in areas where existing timber was at least 0.6 meter in diameter. Continued the abatis for a distance of at least 75 meters. e. Placed wrecked or destroyed equipment and materials in defiles and cuts. f. Destroyed railroads at vulnerable points, such as curves, switches, frogs, and crossovers. Used 1/2-pound explosives for rails less than 12.7 centimeters high and 1-pound explosives for rails over 12.7 centimeters high. g. Destroyed the railway system by destroying a single length of track. (1) Used 1-pound charges. (2) Placed charges on alternate connections of both tracks for a distance of about 150 meters. (3) Tamped charges with sandbags. Ensured that additional personnel followed behind at about 250 meters and lit fuses. (4) Repeated the procedures at 2.4-kilometer intervals.		
6. The platoon disables or destroys the water transportation system. a. Blocked navigation channels by sinking ships or loaded barges and by detonating breaching charges behind retaining walls. b. Disabled or destroyed dams. (1) Destroyed the machinery and equipment. (2) Destroyed penstocks or tunnels used to bypass the dam or carry water to the hydroelectric plants. (3) Destroyed valves or gates used to control the water flow. (4) Dug ditches or emplaced cratering charges below the existing water level (for earth dams). c. Disabled or destroyed canals. (1) Destroyed electrical systems and pumps using explosives. (2) Destroyed lock and canal walls by detonating breaching charges behind them. (3) Destroyed gates (as time permitted).		
7. The platoon disables or destroys the aviation facilities. a. Disabled or destroyed runways and taxiways. (1) Used shaped charges on thick concrete (when time was essential). (2) Placed individual cratering charges diagonally or in a zigzag pattern running back and forth down the runways and taxiways to provide complete destruction. (3) Used 40-pound cratering charges spaced 4.6 meters apart across the runway and buried them 1.3 meters deep. (4) Removed pierced steel planks or other types of landing mats by attaching a larger metal hook to sections and pulling it out with a dozer or other suitable equipment. Followed with cratering. (5) Destroyed bituminous surfaces or thin concrete pavements by digging ditches using dozers or graders. (6) Destroyed turf airstrips by plowing or cratering. (7) Strung wire or cable across runways. (8) Filled 55-gallon drums with sand and placed them on runways.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(9) Placed hulls or debris on runways. b. Destroyed enemy aircraft. (1) Placed 4 pounds of trinitrotoluene (TNT) on each crankshaft between the propeller and the engine and 1 pound on the instrument panel. (2) Destroyed the engines of the jet-propelled aircraft by detonating charges placed on essential parts, such as the compressor, the air intake, or the exhaust turbine. (3) Removed or destroyed the radio equipment, bombsights, radar, and tires. 8. The platoon destroys pipelines and pumping stations. a. Destroyed filled storage tanks by burning them with incendiary grenades or by using a burst of .50-caliber incendiary ammunition. b. Destroyed empty tanks by detonating charges against their bases. c. Destroyed pumping stations by placing gravel in the pipeline or by detonating explosives. Burned the station after detonating the explosives, as time permitted. 9. The platoon damages or destroys the communications systems. a. Destroyed the telephone and telegraph switchboards by placing 1-pound charges on the cables. b. Damaged the pole lines by cutting and burning poles and cutting the wire into short lengths to prevent further use. c. Destroyed the radio installations by— (1) Cutting guy wires, detonating charges against the base, and toppling the tower causing it to land over the high-voltage transmission line through which the radio received its power. (2) Destroying the standby power units and equipment by mechanical means or with explosives. (3) Destroying transformers. *10. The platoon leader submits a report to higher HQ upon completion of the mission or according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-254-1037	Construct a Ditch With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1046	Remove Brush With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1047	Remove Stumps With the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1052	Construct a V Ditch With a Motorized Grader
052-254-1054	Scarify Material With a Motorized Grader
052-254-1059	Excavate With a Scoop Loader

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-254-1061	Move a Load With a Scoop Loader Clamshell
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations
052-256-3045	Direct Motor Grader Operations
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-3048	Direct Utility Tractor Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0201	Create a Crater Obstacle With Explosives
05-4-0205	Create an Abatis

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Equipment Sections

TASK: Clear Obstacles Using Demolitions (05-3-0209)
(FM 5-250) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)
(FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-430-00-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is conducting clearing and grubbing operations in a contemporary operating environment. It has table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE) and personnel. Military demolitions are available, as required. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element uses demolitions to successfully clear obstacles that cannot be taken out by mechanical methods (dozers and cranes). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures.		
* 2. The element leader plans the operation. a. Reconnoitered the site to determine the number of obstacles that must be cleared using demolitions. b. Calculated the amount of required explosives. c. Submitted the explosives request to the battalion Supply Officer (US Army) (S4). d. Considered all demolition safety requirements.		
* 3. The element leader establishes jobsite security.		
4. The element clears the obstacles using demolitions. a. Determined the correct method for blasting. (1) Determined the pattern of tree roots to calculate the placement of explosives for a tree stump. (2) Used either the mudcap, blockhole, or snakehole method for boulders. b. Calculated the required explosives for each individual obstacle. (1) Used a diameter of 1 pound per foot for dead stumps. (2) Used a diameter of 2 pounds per foot for live stumps. c. Drilled holes for the explosive charges. d. Ensured that explosives were command-detonated.		
* 5. The element leader detonates all of the explosive charges. a. Ensured that all safety precautions were followed. b. Ensured that all personnel or equipment would not be affected by debris.		
6. The element removes site debris blown free by explosives.		
7. The element backfills any holes or craters made by explosives.		
* 8. The element leader submits status reports to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-3060	Conduct a Breach of a Minefield
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-193-3022	Calculate Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-3023	Calculate Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3024	Calculate Breaching Charges

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-0411.05-R01A	Perform an Obstacle and Restriction Reconnaissance
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Support Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Prepare Equipment for Air Movement Operations (05-3-0914)
(DOD REG 4500.9-R PT III) (FM 4-01.011)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Air transport of equipment is directed. Skilled technical supervisors, special transportation, and materials-handling equipment (MHE) are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Equipment for the operation is selected according to the marshalling plan. The equipment is broken down into sections, if necessary. It is cleaned, loaded, and rigged so that the load is secure and will not be rejected when inspected. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures.		
* 2. The element leader plans and coordinates the operation. a. Requested aircraft through the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). b. Coordinated with the battalion S3. Gave the type, quantity, and weight of the equipment and the number of personnel to be transported. c. Coordinated the pickup and landing locations.		
* 3. The platoon sergeant (PSG) coordinates the pickup operations. a. Performed a reconnaissance of the airstrip and the access routes onto it. b. Requested additional personnel, such as medics and mechanics. c. Determined load priorities. d. Coordinated equipment arrival times at the airstrip. e. Placed equipment at least 100 meters apart.		
4. The squad prepares the equipment for movement. a. Cleaned equipment of all loose dirt, mud, and grease. b. Disassembled equipment into appropriate parts as required by aircraft restrictions. c. Rigged equipment to stay in place during transport.		
* 5. The element leader/PSG inspects the rigging of the equipment within the aircraft.		
* 6. The element leader/PSG submits status reports as prescribed in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-254-1065	Prepare Heavy Construction Equipment for Transportation
052-255-1048	Load/Unload Crane on Transport
052-255-1049	Prepare Crane Attachments for Transport

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Detachment Headquarters
Administration/Logistical Section
Operations and Plans Section
Assistant Division Engineer Section
Communication Section
Tactical Section

TASK: React to Indirect Fire (07-1-1923.05-T01A)
(FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)
(FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is moving, halted, or occupying a defensive position. Any member of the platoon gives the alert, "Incoming!" or a round impacts on or near their location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Within 2 seconds of the alert, the leader designates the direction and the distance to move. The platoon moves to the specified location. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving mounted. a. The element leader gave the direction and distance to move; for example, "3 o'clock, 200 meters." b. Vehicle commanders repeated the "Incoming!" alert to squad personnel. (1) Personnel closed all hatches. (2) Drivers moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader.		
2. The element reacts to indirect fire while moving dismounted. a. Ensured that if vehicles with mounted weapons were available, the vehicles— (1) Halted as close as possible to the dismounted team, allowing personnel to mount. (2) Moved rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the squad leader. b. Ensured that if vehicles were not available, dismounted personnel kept low and ran out of the impact area in the direction and at the distance ordered by the squad leader.		
3. The element reacts to indirect fire when in a defensive position. a. Moved the vehicles immediately out of the impact area to alternate positions. b. Protected any dismounted personnel by having each one go under the overhead cover of their fighting positions.		
4. The element members move to designated rally points according to the element operation order (OPORD).		
5. The element establishes immediate security at the designated rally point.		
6. The element consolidates and reorganizes.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. The element leader submits a shelling report (SHELREP) or a mortar bombing report (MORTREP) to higher headquarters (HQ). **NOTE: Digital units send the SHELREP using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means or the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Equipment Sections

TASK: Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary) (07-2-1125.05-T01A)
(FM 7-10) (FM 7-92)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is required to conduct a passage of lines. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy can attack by air, indirect fire, and up to company-sized (mounted or dismounted) forces. The unit may be augmented with additional maneuver, combat support (CS), or combat service support (CSS) assets. Civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI) have been published. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element coordinates with the stationary unit, exchanges all the required information, and reports the results of the coordination. Digital units send and receive the reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The passage is conducted at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). There is no compromise of security, and the battle handover is completed as specified. If available, the company uses digital equipment as necessary or as directed to accomplish the mission. No friendly unit suffers casualties or damage to equipment as a result of fratricide. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The Digital Navigation System equipment allows constant situational awareness (SA) between elements conducting a linkup, passage of lines, or a relief operation (any operation that involves friendly units moving toward each other) to aid navigation and fratricide prevention. For example, a moving squad or vehicle can monitor the location of a stationary unit and linkup site using the position updates and digital graphics displayed on the digital display. The stationary unit can also monitor the location of the moving unit as it moves along the prescribed route to the linkup point by monitoring position updates on the digital display. As the moving force closes on the linkup site, the stationary force is more aware of its presence and location, reducing the possibility of fratricide. The moving unit does the same type of monitoring to reduce fratricide potential. Once the moving unit nears the linkup location, the stationary unit should challenge it. This may be done digitally, visually, or with audible sounds using any prearranged signals. For example, the stationary unit can give the moving unit a series of flashes using an infrared source during limited visibility. The moving force responds with a precoordinated number of flashes. The challenge and password is also used between the two units, digitally or verbally.		
* 1. The commander receives an OPORD from higher headquarters (HQ) and initiates planning and coordination for the operation.		
* 2. The passing force commander meets the stationary unit commander and arranges for a specific time and location for coordinating the passage of respective companies (platoon leaders should be included).		
3. The element conducts digital command and control (C2) of operations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Maintained SA. b. Submitted reports and overlays. c. Directed movement, positioning, and fires.		
* 4. The leader or his representative coordinates the passage through and reentry of the lines with the forward unit leader or his representative. a. Gave the unit identification. b. Gave the times of departure and return. c. Gave the unit area of operations (AO).		
* 5. The stationary unit commander provides the leader or his representative with the following: a. Provided terrain information. b. Provided known or suspected enemy positions. c. Provided likely enemy ambush sites. d. Provided the latest enemy activity. e. Provided detailed information on friendly positions. f. Provided obstacle locations. g. Provided the fire support plan. h. Provided unit support; for example, fire support, litter teams, guides, communications, or reaction forces. i. Provided signal operation instructions (SOI) information, the signal plan, the reentry signal, the running password, and procedures to be used by the unit and guide during departure and reentry. j. Provided the locations of the dismounting point (if needed), the company assembly area (AA), routes, and contact and passage points.		
* 6. Leaders of the two units must plan for and coordinate the following: a. Coordinated the exchange of enemy intelligence. b. Planned for the reconnaissance of positions and routes. c. Coordinated the passing unit scheme of maneuver of the passing unit. d. Coordinated the exchange of communication information. e. Planned for recognition signals for the passage. f. Planned for guides (down to squad level) and traffic control measures. g. Planned for security measures for the passage. h. Coordinated fire support responsibilities and fire plans. i. Coordinated the transfer of responsibility and actions on enemy contact during passage. j. Coordinated CSS.		
* 7. Leaders coordinate specific control measures for the passage. a. Included contact points. b. Included passage routes and lanes. c. Included passage points. d. Included release points (RPs). e. Included AAs (rearward passage).		
* 8. Leaders exchange call signs, frequencies, code words, signals, challenges, and passwords to be used at the battle handover line.		
* 9. The commander and leaders physically locate the following during the reconnaissance: a. Located passage routes and lanes. b. Located passage points. c. Located obstacle locations and safety lanes. d. Located RPs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Located AAs (for rearward passage). f. Located contact points. g. Located positions and actions of the stationary force during passage. h. Located CS and CSS elements, command posts (CPs), observation posts (OPs), and Javelin and mortar positions.		
*10. Both leaders ensure that their reconnaissance and other activities do not reveal the operation to the enemy. Stationary unit activities are continued as normal throughout the passage and continued after transfer of responsibility for the zone or sector.		
*11. The leader or his representative checks with other leaders who will be operating in the same or adjacent areas, and they exchange any information that will assist them with their operations.		
12. The unit arrives and moves into a secure position as designated in the primary coordination meeting by the stationary company commander.		
*13. The leader issues a contingency plan before moving out to make final coordination. a. Briefed the elements on what was happening and what was going to happen. b. Briefed the elements on the ROE and the ROI. c. Confirmed the chain of command. d. Briefed the actions to be taken on contact. e. Briefed the actions to be taken in the absence of the leader. f. Provided the time schedule, the suspenses, and any limits on the actions.		
*14. The leader completes the final coordination according to task step 5 with the stationary unit leader or his representative at the CP.		
15. The company moves at the designated time to a covered and concealed position near the contact point.		
16. The elements link up with the guides that lead the security element from the contact points through the passage lanes and passage points to the RPs. **NOTE: The movement technique used may make the clearing team unnecessary; for example, the bounding overwatch.**		
17. The security element clears the area forward of the RPs to the first covered and concealed position.		
18. The company moves forward to the RPs after the area is cleared		
19. The guides identify and account for all vehicles or personnel passing through the passage points, contact points, and RPs.		
20. The company is counted through the RPs by the executive officer (XO), the first sergeant (1SG), or a platoon sergeant (PSG).		
21. Both leaders collocate at a point to observe critical areas, make timely decisions during the passage, and facilitate passage of responsibility for battle handover. Passage movement is continuous.		
22. The company moves beyond the friendly unit final protection fires (FPF). After this, a security halt may be executed.		
23. The XO, 1SG, or PSG does not move forward from the RP until the leader is sure that he will not have to withdraw through the passage point.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
24. The companies move rapidly through the passage lanes to an AA or a new overwatch position. 25. The company complies with the ROE and the ROI. 26. The company or platoon reenters through the lines. 27. The company halts and establishes security. **NOTE: If in contact with the enemy, the company does not halt. The contact party or guides from the stationary unit lead the unit through the passage points, or long-range recognition signals are used to keep moving.** 28. The leader contacted the forward unit and informed it that the unit was ready to reenter. **NOTE: The leader may remain outside friendly lines until daylight. Before reentry, if communications are not possible, a reconnaissance and security team contacts an OP, using the appropriate recognition signals or communication system. The OP then contacts the friendly unit leader. If no communications can be established and no OPs can be found, the leader directs a small security team to reconnoiter for the coordinated contact point.** 29. The leader directs a security team to the contact point when the message is acknowledged. 30. The security team establishes contact with the guide using far-and-near recognition signals. 31. The security team signals the company forward or goes back and leads the company to the passage point. 32. The 1SG or XO and PSG counts and identifies each platoon as it passes through the passage point. 33. The guides lead the unit, without halting, to an AA behind the friendly unit. 34. The leader reports to the CP of the forward unit and gives the commander the tactical information in the commander's area of responsibility. 35. The leader links up with the platoon in the AA and then leads the company back to a secure area for debriefing. 36. The company or platoon conducts stationary unit activities. a. Established and manned contact points. b. Coordinated with the passing unit and exchanged information listed in task steps 3 through 7. c. Selected guides to link up with the passing unit at the coordinated time. d. Provided CS and CSS to the unit, if required. **NOTE: Support may include evacuation of casualties, fire support, and resupply of fuel and ammunition.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-2-1136.05-T02A)
(FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)
(TC 24-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, combined arms support, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the main body of the element into its respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Movement into the AA is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the AA. The enemy does not surprise the main body of the element. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party. a. Selected personnel. b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and crew based on transportation and security requirements. c. Determined essential equipment needed.		
* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party. a. Identified the location of the AA. b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA. c. Relayed the arrival time of the main body at the AA. d. Identified the march order. e. Relayed nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions. f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact. g. Established the MOPP level.		
3. The quartering party moves along the march route. a. Maintained security. b. Reconnoitered the march route from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP) using the digital situational awareness (SA) overlay on the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS). c. Monitored for NBC contamination. d. Marked obstacles and bypass routes. e. Reported critical information to the quartering party leader.		
4. The quartering party moves into the element AA and prepares the area for the arrival of the element. a. Selected and marked the routes from the RP to the new location. b. Selected and posted guides in time to meet the main body. c. Marked entrances, exits, and internal routes.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Marked vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security. e. Marked or removed mines and obstacles. f. Organized and posted local security. 5. The element occupies the AA. a. Moved the covered and concealed quartering party guides to selected or designated areas without halting. b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces. 6. The element establishes the AA perimeter. a. Established the priority of work, which may vary by the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). b. Positioned vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire. c. Established observation posts (OPs) on the critical avenues of approach. d. Established digital and FM communications between all positions using wire communications, if the time and situation permitted. e. Prepared range cards. f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions. g. Cleared the fields of fire. h. Camouflaged positions. i. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms and early warning devices. 7. The element performs internal AA operations. a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment. b. Distributed ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment. c. Established personal hygiene and field sanitation sites. d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline. e. Instituted a rest plan for element members and leaders. f. Inspected the AA. * 8. The element leader coordinates with the elements on the left and the right as a minimum. a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements. b. Exchanged information on the OP locations and the elements signals. c. Coordinated local counterattacks. d. Developed a defensive plan and forwarded it to higher headquarters (HQ). * 9. Leaders develop contingency plans. a. Developed an evacuation plan. b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact. 10. The unit conducts rehearsals. a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan. b. Rehearsed the plan of action on enemy contact.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Detachment Headquarters
Tactical Section

TASK: Conduct a Convoy (07-2-1301.05-T01A)
(FM 55-30) (FM 21-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Upon receipt of an operation order (OPORD), the element moves to a new location given in the OPORD and conducts operations at that location. There is a possibility of enemy contact with threat patrols up to platoon and company size. Threat mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company standing operating procedure (SOP) is available and contains movement readiness levels and current loading plans. The convoy may be conducted during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. The column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available position/navigation (POS/NAV) and terrain analysis capabilities, to include space-based assets. a. Indicated the start point (SP). b. Identified locations of friendly units. c. Identified potential ambush sites. d. Identified checkpoints (CPs). e. Identified sites to be used for scheduled halts. f. Indicated the release point (RP).		
2. The reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available. a. Dressed in the designated MOPP gear. b. Activated the automatic chemical alarm. c. Monitored radiation-monitoring devices. d. Verified map information. e. Identified capacities of bridges and underpasses. f. Identified the location of culverts, ferries, forging areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites. g. Prepared the map overlay. h. Computed the travel time. i. Prepared the strip map.		
* 3. The convoy commander coordinates for required support with higher headquarters (HQ). a. Included military police (MP) support. b. Included medical support. c. Included fire support (FS). d. Included engineer support. e. Included maintenance contact team support. f. Included additional requirements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The element prepares vehicles and equipment. a. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). b. Corrected minor deficiencies. c. Reported major deficiencies. d. Hardened vehicles using sandbags or other authorized materials. e. Covered unit identification markings on vehicles and personnel. f. Covered or removed reflective surfaces. g. Placed antennas at their lowest height. h. Turned radio volumes and squelches to their lowest setting, consistent with operational requirements.		
* 5. The convoy commander organizes the convoy. a. Assigned cargo vehicle positions. b. Positioned control vehicles without setting a pattern. c. Assigned recovery vehicle positions. d. Arranged hardened vehicles near the head of the convoy. e. Specified passenger locations. f. Appointed air guards. g. Organized the trail party element. h. Provided vehicle position listings to the trail party leader.		
* 6. The convoy commander briefs the convoy personnel. a. Provided strip maps to each vehicle driver. b. Identified the convoy chain of command. c. Detailed the convoy route. d. Specified the march rate and the catch-up speed. e. Specified convoy intervals. f. Identified the scheduled halts. g. Briefed accident and breakdown procedures. h. Briefed immediate-action security measures. i. Briefed blackout condition procedures. j. Specified the location of medical support. k. Specified the location of maintenance support. l. Briefed communication procedures. m. Specified the location and the identification of the destination.		
7. The convoy crosses the SP. a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that vehicles had crossed the SP. c. Forwarded the SP crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit had passed the SP.		
* 8. The convoy commander provides convoy information to higher HQ. a. Reported the SP crossing time. b. Reported the CP clearance, when crossed. c. Pointed out data that conflicted with the maps. d. Used the correct signal operation instructions (SOI) codes in all transmissions. e. Reported the RP crossing time.		
9. The convoy maintains march discipline. a. Maintained the designated march speed. b. Maintained proper vehicle intervals. c. Crossed CPs as scheduled. d. Reacted correctly to the convoy commander's signals.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Maintained security throughout the movement and during halts.		
10. The company conducts a scheduled halt. a. Stopped the column at the prescribed time. b. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals. c. Moved vehicles off the road. d. Established local security. e. Performed PMCS. f. Inspected vehicle loads. g. Departed at the specified time.		
11. The company conducts an unscheduled halt. a. Alerted the march column. b. Reported the stoppage to higher HQ. c. Maintained prescribed vehicular intervals. d. Established local security. e. Reported the resumption of the march to higher HQ.		
12. The convoy moves under blackout conditions. a. Provided a visual adjustment period. b. Prepared vehicles for blackout conditions. c. Maintained prescribed vehicle distances. d. Wore night vision goggles (specified personnel). e. Wore regular eye protection goggles. f. Used ground guides during poor visibility periods.		
13. The trail party recovers disabled vehicles. a. Inspected the disabled vehicles. b. Repaired the disabled vehicles, when possible. c. Towed the vehicles, if necessary. d. Reported the status of the vehicles to the convoy commander.		
14. The convoy moves through urban areas. a. Identified weight, height, and width restrictions. b. Used close-column formation. c. Obeyed traffic control directions. d. Used direction guides at critical intersections.		
15. The convoy crosses the RP. a. Crossed at the specified time. b. Verified that the vehicles had crossed the RP. c. Forwarded the crossing report to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-3-0412	Perform a Technical Reconnaissance
19-1-1102	Coordinate Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance
19-1-1201	Prepare Traffic Control Plan

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters

TASK: React to an Ambush (07-3-1112.05-T01A)
(FM 7-8) (FM 3-20.98) (FM 34-2-1)
(FM 7-92)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a prepared kill zone. The enemy initiates the ambush with a casualty-producing device and a high volume of fire. The unit has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE) and from mission instructions, such as the peace mandate terms of reference, the Status of Forces Agreement (SOFA), and the rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, government organizations, nongovernment organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the international press may be present on the battlefield. The presence of civilians can restrict the use of fires and reduce the combat power available to the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element reacts immediately to the ambush based on the type (near, far). The platoon disengages the element in the kill zone or forces the enemy to withdraw. The platoon continues follow-on operations. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instruction, and higher headquarters (HQ) and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Leaders ensure that the ROE and the ROI are disseminated to subordinate personnel.		
1. Personnel in the kill zone react to a near ambush (within hand grenade range). a. Returned fire immediately; assumed covered positions; and threw fragmentation, concussion, and smoke grenades. b. Assaulted individually through the ambush using individual fire and movement immediately after the grenades detonated.		
2. Personnel not in the kill zone react to a near ambush. a. Identified enemy positions. b. Initiated immediate suppressive fires against the enemy. c. Took up covered positions. d. Shifted fires as personnel in the kill zone assaulted through the ambush.		
3. Personnel receiving fire in a far ambush (beyond hand grenade range) immediately return fire and take up covered positions. a. Suppressed or destroyed enemy crew-served weapons first. b. Obscured the enemy position with smoke. c. Sustained suppressive fires and shifted them as the assaulting squads fought through the enemy position.		
4. Personnel not receiving fire react to a far ambush. a. Moved by a covered and concealed route to a vulnerable flank of the enemy position. b. Assaulted using fire and movement techniques.		
5. The element forward observer (FO) calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the element leader. a. Used indirect fires to isolate the enemy position.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Adjusted fires on any retreating enemy. * 6. The platoon leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn. a. Reported the situation to higher HQ. b. Consolidated and reorganized as necessary. c. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0100	Coordinate the Synchronization and Integration of Fire Support (FS)
08-2-0314.05-T01A	Treat Unit Casualties (for Units With Medical Treatment Personnel)
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Conduct a Tactical Road March (07-3-1123.05-T01A)
(FM 7-10) (FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is ordered to conduct a tactical road march. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The enemy (no larger than a squad or platoon size) can assault mounted or dismounted and employ indirect fires or air support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element crosses the start point (SP), follows the prescribed route without deviation (unless required otherwise by enemy action or at the direction of higher headquarters [HQ]), and crosses the release point (RP), all as specified in the order. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) to subordinate leaders. a. Included enough information for subordinate elements to prepare for the mission. b. Gave the WO immediately after being alerted for the mission. c. Included movement instructions if the movement was to be initiated before the operation order (OPORD) was issued. d. Addressed items not covered in the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). e. Specified the time and location to issue the OPORD.		
* 2. The element leader completes the plan and issues the march order. a. Provided a statement of the enemy situation, weather, and visibility conditions. b. Identified the route, the SP, the RP, critical points, and other control points. c. Provided the order of movement, the order of march, the march rate, and the distance to maintain between units. d. Established security tasks for subordinate elements, to include all-around security and air guard coverage for the entire element. e. Addressed contingencies for actions on enemy contact. **NOTE: Plans must include the reaction to an enemy ambush; indirect fire; an air attack; a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attack; and sniper fires.** f. Provided the soldiers with load guides. g. Ensured that subordinate leaders briefed their plans.		
3. The element conducts the necessary resupply of water, rations, ammunition, batteries, and special-issue items.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Inspected personnel and vehicles for the proper load and equipment and their readiness to move. b. Completed a communications check using digital and FM radios to report the readiness of the unit element to move.		
4. The element conducts the road movement. a. Crossed the SP at the designated time. b. Maintained personnel and vehicle intervals and the march rate specified in the order or the unit SOP. c. Followed the prescribed route.		
5. The element maintains local security throughout the movement. a. Maintained all-around observation at all times, to include air guards. b. Oriented as directed to establish local security.		
6. The unit reports and reacts to enemy contact using the Digital Reconnaissance System (DRS). a. Reported and reacted according to directions in the OPORD. b. Reported and reacted according to the unit SOP.		
7. The unit halts. a. Conducted the halt at regular intervals according to the unit SOP (as the tactical situation permitted) to rest the troops, adjust and redistribute the equipment, and perform foot hygiene. b. Positioned the element to provide all-around security. c. Reported all halts to the next higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal (MSRT). d. Positioned vehicles in a herringbone formation. e. Dismounted personnel to provide local security. f. Checked the condition of personnel and equipment. g. Coordinated with the adjacent unit. h. Reported the status to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.		
* 8. The leader controls the unit. a. Used visual, messenger, digital, or radio signals for control throughout the movement. b. Reported control measures as directed by the SOP or the order using the DRS. c. Used control measures from the order, and modified them as needed.		
9. The element arrives at the RP at the time specified in the order. a. Met the quartering party guide, if one was designated. b. Passed through the RP without halting. c. Reported the crossing to higher HQ using the digital reporting procedures on the MSRT.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Move Tactically (07-3-C211.05-T01A)
(FM 7-7) (FM 3-21.71) (FM 7-10)
(FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is required to move cross-country, mounted or dismounted. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFOR). The element retains its ability to move. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader assigns areas of responsibility (AORs) during the movement. a. Assigned all squads to an AOR. b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual AORs. c. Ensured that there was all-around coverage of the platoon, including air guard.		
* 2. The platoon leader designates a route for the movement. a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation. b. Ensured that there was cover from the direct fire of known enemy positions.		
3. The squads use a wedge formation during the movement. a. Formed one or two wedges based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. b. Closed the wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. Maintained the rate of movement. c. Opened the wedges as obstructions to the movement and to diminish control.		
* 4. The element leader designates a movement technique to use that is based on METT-TC factors. a. Designated a traveling-movement technique when enemy contact was not likely. b. Designated a traveling-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was possible. c. Designated a bounding-overwatch-movement technique when enemy contact was likely.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The element performs a traveling-movement technique. a. Maintained fire teams about 20 meters apart when dismounted. b. Moved the squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart when dismounted. c. Moved in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles when mounted. d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.		
6. The element performs a traveling-overwatch-movement technique. **NOTE: When dismounted, the lead element uses a traveling-overwatch-movement technique, and the trailing squads use a traveling-movement technique.** a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the main body of the platoon by 50 to 100 meters. b. Conducted the movement (mounted) with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the element; other vehicles were 50 to 100 meters apart. c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.		
7. The element performs a bounding-overwatch-movement technique. a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch. b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.		
8. The bounding squad moves. a. Signaled to the platoon leader that it was beginning its movement. b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound. c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed. d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operations security (OPSEC). e. Moved so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element. f. Established an overwatch position upon completion of its bound to overwatch the succeeding bound. g. Informed the element leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch. h. Alerted the element leader and the overwatching element of any enemy that was detected, any obstacles that were encountered, or any danger areas.		
9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch. a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the movement of the bounding squad to its next overwatch position. b. Oriented the weapons on likely enemy positions. c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route. d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed. e. Alerted the bounding squad and the element leader of any enemy that it detected. f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed the overwatch position.		
10. The element maintains security during movement. a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters (the interval automatically expands and contracts based on terrain and visibility).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Maintained noise and light discipline. c. Observed sectors of fires to avoid any enemy that was approaching the platoon within 35 meters and any aircraft that was attacking the platoon without warning. *11. Leaders use control measures during the movement. a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement. b. Positioned key weapons. c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement. *12. The element leader controls movement of the elements. a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas. b. Used arm-and-hand signals once contact was made. c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made. *13. The element leader knows the elements location at all times. a. Expressed the location of the platoon as a 6-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics. b. Knew the location of all the elements including the leading, flanking, and trailing company elements. Was accurate to plus or minus 100 meters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Conduct a Radiological, Chemical, or Biological Reconnaissance or Survey (03-2-3008.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19)

ITERATION:	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is conducting operations in an area where nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) weapons have been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of (or information on) radiological, chemical, or biological hazards in the area of operational concern. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The commander and operations section plan a reconnaissance or survey mission for the company organic reconnaissance element. The plan is issued with two-thirds planning time remaining for the element. The plan must be detailed and feasible for the element to perform. If the situation and location permit, the commander supervises the preparation and execution.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives and analyzes the mission and identifies all unit tasks.		
* 2. The element leader issues a warning order (WO) as soon as possible to subordinate leaders.		
* 3. The element leader and the operations section make a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. a. Planned reconnaissance or survey techniques, locations, turn-back dose rates (radiological missions), decontamination after the reconnaissance or survey, fire support, reporting procedures, logistical support, and leader and signal information. b. Coordinated for intelligence information, air- or indirect-fire support, and medical support and coordinated the element plan with units in the area of operations, if necessary. c. Drew, stocked, or coordinated petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); ammunition; MOPP gear; Classes II and VII support; and maintenance/recovery/Class IX support for the platoon.		
* 4. The element leader orders units to start movement, if necessary.		
* 5. The element leader reconnoiters the operations area and performs a map reconnaissance as a minimum.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. The element leader completes the plan and issues the operation order (OPORD) with two-thirds of the total planning time remaining for the platoon.		
* 7. The element leader supervises preparations of the reconnaissance or survey if the location of operations permits. Communications, supply, and maintenance sections assist the platoons with priority maintenance and resupply support.		
8. The element conducts a tactical road march or executes a traveling movement to the reconnaissance or survey site. The reconnaissance or survey element— a. Executed a mounted movement technique (traveling, traveling overwatch, or bounding overwatch) or reconnoitered dismounted, as the situation and or mission required. b. Detected and marked the contaminated area, ensuring that marking signs were facing toward friendly areas. Detected uncontaminated areas and routes. Selected decontamination sites with a water source, cover and concealment, and the physical capacity to hold a site if required to perform reconnaissance for decontamination sites as a mission. c. Determined the limits of the contaminated area. Detected the types of chemical agents or specific levels and types of radiological contamination as required by the mission.		
9. The headquarters (HQ), if prescribed by the mission, assists the reconnaissance or survey unit recovery operations.		
*10. The element leader or operations officer, if prescribed by the mission, debriefs the returning reconnaissance or survey units and forwards the acquired information to higher HQ in NBC 4 or NBC 5 format, if required.		
*11. The radiological element leaders record, collate, and submit individual and unit radiation exposure status (RES) readings to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0118	Conduct Minesweeping Operations
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-1220	Conduct Fire and Maneuver Operations
05-3-1239	Plan and Control Indirect Fire
07-2-1125.05-T01A	Conduct Passage of Lines (Passing/Stationary)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-C211.05-T01A	Move Tactically

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201.05-T01A)
(FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks and/or contamination and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader checks the accountability and serviceability of the NBC defense equipment. a. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators. b. Ensured that the NBC detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes. c. Identified equipment shortages. d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment.		
2. The element assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). a. Donned masks and hoods within 15 seconds. b. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes.		
3. Soldiers take actions to protect themselves against an NBC attack. a. Set up and used collective protective shelters (if available). b. Prepared protective shelters, such as foxholes with overhead cover.		
* 4. The element leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis. a. Received and analyzed the enemy NBC threat capability. Took the following into consideration: (1) Was the unit targeted or could it be targeted? (2) Did the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons? (3) When or where could the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons? b. Collected and analyzed weather data. Took the following into consideration:		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Was it day or night? (2) What were current weather conditions (see the chemical downwind message [CDM] or weather report)? (3) What were weather conditions 2, 4, and 6 hours in the future (see the CDM or weather report)? c. Analyzed the element status and mission. Took the following into consideration: (1) What was the mission? (2) What was the work rate? (3) How long did the work take? (4) What were the training and physical levels of the unit? (5) How long did it take to warn all the soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202.05-T01A)
(FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel assume mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The element protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order. 2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack. a. Assumed MOPP4 within 8 minutes after notification. b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, either their right or left ankles, and the vehicles. c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures. d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of their position. 3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions or shelters. a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters. b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. **NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover, consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.** * 4. The noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions. a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP4. b. Ensured that individual and element fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover. * 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)
(FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP4, and use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators of a chemical or biological attack. a. Gave the alarm (vocal or nonvocal). b. Ensured that soldiers put on their protective masks within 9 seconds. c. Assumed MOPP4 as soon as possible. d. Sought additional shelter, if available. e. Administered a nerve agent antidote (buddy aid) to other soldiers with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable). f. Administered nerve agent antidotes to selves (if applicable). g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed.		
2. Soldiers take additional protective measures. a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits. c. Applied prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.		
3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination. a. Conducted skin decontamination. b. Wiped down personal equipment with M291 or M280 decontamination kits. c. Conducted operator spray down of equipment.		
* 4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ). a. Ensured that casualties were provided with medical care. b. Reported casualties. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a strike warning message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear-strike warning. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The designated radio operator acknowledges the strike warning message. a. Authenticated the call. b. Acknowledged the warning by returning the message.		
* 2. The unit leader issues a warning order. a. Warned subordinate and affected units. b. Ensured that subordinates executed actions as directed.		
3. Soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs. a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment. c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. **NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike.** f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Digital units ensured that the systems were prepared according to the unit tactical standing operating procedures (TACSOP). h. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order. 2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Placed vehicles and equipment where the terrain shielding was best (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antenna leads according to the unit SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable, or explosive items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters (if available). i. Used field-expedient shelters. 3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	**Task Title**
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208.05-T01A)
(FM 3-3) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing. a. Directed individuals to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves. b. Received operational-exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose rate). c. Ensured that radiac equipment operators checked the instruments. 2. The unit prepares for the crossing. a. Identified extra shielding requirements (for example, used sandbags on the vehicle floor). b. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. c. Started continuous monitoring. 3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoided stirring up dust. b. Kept out of the dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles. c. Conducted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should have been buttoned up). 4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Evacuated casualties. e. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209.05-T01A)
(FM 3-50)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede the performance of the mission. a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke. b. Exploited threat smoke to conceal its own movements. c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat use of smoke. d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.		
2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades. a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit. b. Determined the wind direction and speed. c. Determined where to release the smoke and where it would travel. d. Determined the duration of the smoke operations. e. Determined the effects of weather conditions on the smoke plan. f. Ensured that the smoke covered an area larger than the unit position. g. Requested smoke support from other units (if organic systems would not accomplish the task).		
3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. a. Determined what available target acquisition and guidance systems were effective in the smoke. b. Requested and used target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in the smoke.		
* 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests a resupply of smoke munitions when required. a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots. b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout. a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves. b. Covered equipment; munitions; petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL); and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles. c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout. d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) detection and identification equipment. 2. Designated personnel monitor fallout. a. Maintained total-dose information using available total-dose instruments. b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible. c. Calculated the optimum time of exit. d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) using secure means when possible. * 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan. a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure. b. Planned for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure. * 4. The unit leader submits reports according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223.05-T01A)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes action to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack. a. Without warning, soldiers— (1) Closed their eyes immediately. (2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with their head toward the blast (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle). (3) Kept their heads and their faces down and helmets on. (4) Remained in a prone position until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling. b. With warning, soldiers— (1) Identified the best available shelter, such as fighting positions or inside shelters. (2) Moved to the shelter. (3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation. (4) Kept clothing loosely fitted and their headgear on at all times. (5) Protected their eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.		
* 2. Leaders reorganize the unit. a. Reestablished the chain of command. b. Reestablished communications. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters (HQ). d. Treated casualties. e. Reported casualties. f. Evacuated casualties. g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation. h. Implemented continuous monitoring. i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ. j. Initiated an area damage control plan, as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
k. Extinguished all fires. * 3. Leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational. 4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles. a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids. b. Performed operator maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use. 5. Soldiers improve cover. a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224.05-T01A)
(FM 3-5) (FM 3-11.11)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is operating in a contaminated environment and/or is contaminated. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. Time and the tactical situation permit the element to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, element decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination element is available, operational, and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The contaminated unit determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. a. Received input from staff and subordinate leaders. b. Established decontamination priorities. 2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request, as a minimum, included the— a. Contaminated element designation. b. Contaminated element location. c. Contaminated element frequency and call sign. d. Time that the element became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that were contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a element decontamination team). * 3. The contaminated unit leader coordinates with higher HQ. a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtain the necessary support.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Selected a linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon). c. Coordinated with supporting units. d. Requested replacement MOPP gear. e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.		
* 4. The contaminated unit leader and NBC specialist select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected— a. Provided adequate overhead concealment. b. Provided good drainage. c. Provided easy access and exit (but off the main routes). d. Provided the proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash down. e. Provided an area large enough to accommodate units involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both the vehicle washdown site and the MOPP gear exchange site).		
5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit). a. Requested operational decontamination support. b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination. c. Established communications with the decontamination element. d. Ensured that the decontamination element knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination sites.		
6. The contaminated element and supporting elements move to the decontamination site. a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated. b. Provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site by the contaminated element.		
7. The elements prepare for operational decontamination. a. Set up the decontamination site. (1) The supporting decontamination element crew set up the vehicle washdown site. (2) The contaminated unit set up the MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle washdown site. (3) The remainder of the element prepared its equipment for decontamination. b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. (1) Vehicle crews (except for the operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior. (2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from the vehicles. **NOTE: The contaminated element provides personnel to do this when the crews do not dismount.** (3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. (a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper intervals). (b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up; for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered. (4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle washdown site. (5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination element supervises the operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that vehicle operators— a. Maintained the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station. b. Washed vehicles. (1) Started at the top and worked down. (2) Sprayed hot, soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle. (3) Monitored water consumption. c. Moved to the assembly area (AA) after the vehicle wash down. d. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange.		
9. The contaminated element conducts MOPP gear exchange. a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix). b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed. c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material). d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system. e. Moved soldiers to the AA after completing MOPP gear exchange.		
NOTES: **1. Ensure that the supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding.** **2. The supporting decontamination element cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination (using an NBC 4 report) to higher HQ.**		
*10. Element leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.		
*11. The contaminated element leader reports to higher HQ. a. Reported the completion and location of the vehicle washdown and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites. b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazards were detected. c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).		
12. The contaminated element continues the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226.05-T01A)
(FM 3-3)

ITERATION:	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is en route to a new location on a designated route. The unit cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area. a. Employed a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 5 (chemical) report and/or reconnaissance reports to select a route. b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission. c. Obtained a route clearance and approval.		
2. The unit prepares to cross the area. a. Assumed mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area. b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route or had strip maps. c. Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement). d. Placed externally stored equipment inside the vehicle or covered it with available material. e. Attached M9 detector paper to soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.		
3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation. b. Conducted dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible. c. Crossed the area as quickly and carefully as possible.		
4. The unit exits the contaminated area. a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	**Task Title**
12-1-0403.05-T01A	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Command Section
Detachment Headquarters
Administration/Logistical Section
Operations and Plans Section
Assistant Division Engineer Section
Communication Section
Tactical Section
Unit Ministry Team

TASK: Defend a Convoy Against a Ground Attack (05-2-0911)
(FM 55-30) (FM 21-75) (FM 24-19)
(FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1) (FM 3-90.1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment the unit is conducting a convoy. The operation order (OPORD) and the rules of engagement (ROE) provide guidance for the mission and actions to take upon contact. The enemy squad- to platoon-size force attacks the main body of the convoy. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The convoy protects itself and attacks or disengages from the enemy. The convoy minimizes casualties or damage by taking immediate action. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prepares for combat operations. **NOTE: Digital units set stale settings to provide current friendly and enemy unit locations.** a. Designated and positioned the security elements throughout the convoy (front, rear, and flank). b. Established radio communications with security elements. c. Designated actions upon enemy contact (action front, left, right, or rear; air attack; or indirect fire). d. Assigned each armed vehicle a sector of fire for the movement, and ensured that the convoy had 360° coverage while moving. e. Designated en route rally points and the actions to be taken at those points. f. Coordinated with the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) for indirect fire along the planned route. g. Received an update from the battalion Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) on probable enemy actions influencing the convoy route or the mission. **NOTE: Digital units receive updated intelligence information through the Force XXI Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or the Maneuver Control System (MCS).**		
2. The element prepares for combat operations. a. Loaded vehicles, stowed or tied down all loose equipment, and ensured that there was enough space to bring weapons to bear. **NOTE: Air guards are present.** b. Ensured that weapons were functional and had their basic load of ammunition.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Rehearsed the procedures for enemy contact before the start point (SP). d. Ensured that each vehicle commander knew the route and all standing operating procedures (SOPs). 3. The convoy reacts to enemy contact. a. Scanned the area for the enemy and returned fire at identified enemy positions. b. Sought available cover. c. Maneuvered vehicles to allow the gunner to engage the enemy and moved all unarmed vehicles to cover. d. Provided suppressive gunnery fire on the enemy. e. Deployed the security teams and reported the situation to the element leader. * 4. The element leader develops the situation. a. Initiated fire and maneuver. b. Requested indirect-fire support. c. Sought information on the enemy strength, composition, and disposition. d. Evaluated the direction and volume of the enemy fire, confirmed or suspected enemy positions, and the terrain capacity for the masking forces. * 5. The element leader selects a course of action based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) and the developing situation. a. Maneuvered to attack the enemy flank. b. Conducted a frontal assault. c. Broke contact and moved away from the enemy position by fire and maneuver. 6. The security element engages the enemy (within capabilities). * 7. The element leader reports the tactical situation to higher headquarters (HQ). 8. The element reorganizes and resumes its convoy. a. Reconstituted the security force. b. Treated and evacuated casualties. c. Reported casualties. d. Redistributed ammunition and equipment. e. Recovered any damaged equipment or destroyed it in place.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operation Order
071-326-5605	Control Movement of a Fire Team
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-1301.05-T01A	Conduct a Convoy
07-3-1112.05-T01A	React to an Ambush
10-2-0318.05-T01A	Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Conduct an Extraction From a Minefield (05-3-0113)
(FM 20-32) (FM 5-250) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. While moving mounted or dismounted, remotely delivered mines impact on or around the element. Personnel have fragmentation armor and ballistic glasses (if available). Each vehicle is equipped with 30 meters of line and light grapnels. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element extracts all vehicles and personnel from the minefield. Digital units send and receive orders and reports and update the common operational picture (COP) using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The individual who first discovers a mine initiates the alarm according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). **NOTE: Digital units send alert messaging and populate the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) with the location and/or send reports using FM or digital means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).** 2. Command post (CP) personnel receive the alarm and alert units. a. Notified all elements. If the element was— (1) Mounted, it accelerated and moved out of the area. When tactically feasible, the element moved in a column along a hard-surfaced road, watching for mines along the route. (2) Dismounted, it moved rapidly out of the area along the best-cleared route, watching for mines and trip wires. (3) Dismounted and deployed in a bivouac or assembly area (AA), it departed immediately along a hard-surfaced road (if practical), watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines. (4) Unable to depart immediately, it remained in covered or protected positions until the minefield was deployed. The element carefully cleared mines from positions through detonation and departed as soon as feasible, following a hard-surfaced road (if practical) and watching for mines along the route. The element abandoned all equipment and vehicles that came in contact with mines.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Informed higher headquarters (HQ) and adjacent units of the situation and included a description of the mines and the extent to which they were employed. c. Requested counterbattery fire (if the mines were artillery-delivered). 3. Vehicle commanders check the immediate area and element personnel remove any mines and trip wires from vehicles. Element personnel— a. Dismounted and inspected the vehicles for mines and trip wires. b. Removed trip wires from soft-skinned vehicles using a grapnel or a similar device. **NOTE: When using a grapnel to remove trip wires, throw the grapnel away from the covered position. Sound a warning to others in the area before throwing the grapnel.** c. Left any vehicles touching or blocked in by antitank (AT) mines until the rest of the unit was out of the minefield. * 4. Element leaders identify unmovable vehicles and designate one or more lanes as exit lanes to allow remaining personnel and vehicles to leave the minefield, normally along previously used access routes. 5. Element personnel mark designated lanes and destroy or remove mines within them. a. Used visual means to locate mines and marked the vehicle lanes. The lanes were at least 5 meters wide. The lanes were marked according to the tactical situation and threat; however, marked areas also allowed personnel to reenter the minefield and recover equipment or vehicles. b. Destroyed or removed all mines in the lanes (using a grapnel hook or other means) as directed by the company commander. Detonated only unmovable mines, reducing the likelihood of fragmentation injuries and equipment damage. * 6. Vehicle commanders direct the personnel that are ground-guiding vehicles out of the minefield. a. Ensured that individual elements moved only when directed to do so by the chain of command. b. Ensured that any equipment not in contact with a mine or a trip wire was placed onto vehicles. c. Ensured that individual crews ground-guided vehicles to a designated lane or allowed them to exit the minefield on their own. 7. Company personnel remove any equipment or vehicles remaining after the initial extraction from the minefield. a. Reentered the minefield using the same exit routes. b. Detonated the minimum number of mines necessary to remove vehicles or equipment from the minefield. c. Avoided contact with mines and took all possible precautions to ensure that they were not jarred. d. Placed sandbags near mines to minimize vehicle and equipment damage. e. Removed mines from the equipment using a line or other remote means, and ensured that all personnel remained at a safe distance. f. Placed explosive charges to minimize vehicle damage when detonating mines on the ground. 8. If the position cannot be evacuated, element personnel clear sufficient mines to allow mission accomplishment. a. Cleared the communication lanes between positions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Marked the communication lanes between positions. c. Placed sandbags around mines to prevent injury and damage to the equipment from the detonation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-2150	Setup an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]), Preoperation
052-192-2151	Operate an M71 Remote Control Unit (for the Hornet)
052-192-2152	Emplace an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Remote Operations
052-192-3201	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) for Area Distribution
052-192-3202	Direct the Emplacement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) in a Gauntlet
052-192-3203	Direct the Employment of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) with a Conventional Minefield
052-192-4201	Supervise the Placement of an M93 Hornet (Wide-Area Munition [WAM]) Field
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-0115.05-R01A)
(FM 5-34) (DA FORM 1355-1-R) (FM 20-32)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment and is given an order to emplace a hasty protective row minefield. Copies of Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1-R, M15 and M21 antitank (AT) mines, and M16A1 (Korea only) and M18A1 antipersonnel (AP) mines are issued. Time is available to conduct a reconnaissance of the area. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All mines are placed where they can be observed and covered by fires. The AT mines are placed in order to affect likely enemy-mounted avenues of approach (AAs). AP mines are intermixed with AT mines and affect dismounted approaches. Minefields are marked and guarded. DA Form 1355-1-R is completed and copies are submitted to the next higher headquarters (HQ). Digital units send and receive reports and orders using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives an operation order (OPORD)/fragmentary order (FRAGO) to lay a hasty protective row minefield. **NOTE: The brigade commander has the initial authority to employ hasty protective row minefields. He may delegate emplacement authority to the battalion or company commanders on a mission basis. This information and authorization is found in the OPORD, which is passed to the platoon level. Digital units receive the OPORD/FRAGO through the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).**		
* 2. The element leader reports the intention to lay the minefield to higher headquarters (HQ). **NOTE: This is the first of four reports: intention to lay, initiation to lay, status, and completion. All reports must be sent in a secure manner. In most situations, the squad works together to emplace the minefield. For larger minefields, the coordination for support from other combat arms must be made to supplement manpower.** a. Determined the location of the minefield. b. Estimated the number and types of mines to be laid. c. Determined whether the mines would be buried. d. Determined the proposed start of the minefield and the completion date and time. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs) f. Established security.		
* 3. Tank commanders (TCs) order the drivers to maneuver their vehicles using a covered and concealed route to the selected minefield location.		
* 4. TCs instruct drivers to move their vehicles to an overwatch position. a. Used cover and concealment. b. Moved into a hull-down position, if possible. c. Covered likely enemy positions and approaches.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The element and subordinate leaders conduct a reconnaissance of the proposed minefield area to identify mine locations. a. Overwatched likely enemy AAs. b. Enhanced key weapons systems. c. Covered dead space and ensured that the minefield was covered by fire. d. Established an easily identifiable reference point (RP) between the minefield and the position of the unit.		
* 6. The element and subordinate leaders return to draw mines and needed equipment to emplace the minefield.		
* 7. The element leader divides personnel into four parties: siting and recording, marking, mine dumping, and laying.		
* 8. The element leader reports the initiation of the minefield. a. Specified the emplacement start time. b. Specified the exact location. c. Specified the target number.		
* 9. The element leader directs the siting and recording party to lay out the minefield, RPs, landmarks, and row markers and then sends the initiation report to higher HQ. **NOTES: Mines are not armed and do not have trip wires attached. Only metallic mines are used; no booby traps or antihandling devices (AHDs) are used. A general rule of thumb for spacing AT and AP (Korea only) mines is to place them no closer than 4 meters apart. There is no maximum distance; however, the distance should not pose any tactical impact to adjacent friendly units.** a. Installed the mines. (1) Laid the minefield from right to left. (2) Placed row markers at the beginning and end of each row and labeled them with the corresponding letter of each row. Used number 1 for the beginning of the row and number 2 for the end. **NOTE: Markers should be easily identifiable objects, such as steel pickets that can be found with a handheld, portable mine detecting set (AN/PSS-12 mine detector).** (3) Ensured that the rows were outside of the hand grenade range but within the range of small-caliber weapons. (4) Placed individual mines far enough apart to prevent simultaneous detonation. **NOTE: The mines should be no closer than 4 meters for surface-laid M15 mines and 7.6 meters for surface-laid M19 mines. The distance from the row marker to the first mine in that row is the spacing used throughout the row. The spacing between rows should be no closer than 8 meters or 15 meters if AP mines are used.** (5) Emplaced AT mines so that they would affect likely enemy-mounted AAs. (6) Intermixed AP mines with AT mines to deny enemy-dismounted AAs. **NOTE: M18A1 AP mines are command-detonated when not used in Korea. M16A1 AP mines are used in Korea only.** (a) Buried M21 or M15 AT mines with only the tilt rod exposed. (b) Camouflaged the tilt rod with brush or tall grass, if time permitted. (c) Buried M16A1 AP mines (Korea only) up to the bottom of the release-pin ring leaving only the pressure prongs above ground to provide the stability required for proper employment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(7) Submitted a strip record to the officer in charge (OIC) for recording on DA Form 1355-1-R. *10. The element leader records the minefield on DA Form 1355-1-R. **NOTE: All measurements are recorded in meters.** a. Selected and recorded an easily identifiable and relatively permanent RP in front of the position. **NOTE: A good RP should have some degree of survivability from an artillery barrage.** b. Determined the scale to be used in plotting the minefield on the form. **NOTE: The following formula is used to determine the scale: The distance from the RP to the farthest point in the minefield plus 10 meters divided by four equals the scale. Adding the 10 meters is a safety margin to ensure that the sum of the minefield sketch is entirely contained within the largest ring. Dividing by four is a constant and represents the concentric rings on DA Form 1355-1-R.** c. Plotted the RP in the center of the circles on the form. d. Indicated the end of each row marker by labeling it with the letter of the row. Used number 1 for one end and number 2 for the other. **NOTE: The row closest to the enemy is designated by using an "A," while "B," "C," and so on is used for succeeding rows.** e. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the last row. **NOTE: Determine the magnetic azimuth in degrees from the RP to the first row marker, and record it as "B1." Use "B1" if there are two rows, "C1" if there are three, and so forth. This marks the beginning of that row.** f. Recorded the azimuth and the distance to the next row, which would be "A1" in this case. g. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth to each row marker. **NOTE: Measure the distance and the azimuth from "A1" to the first mine to be recorded, then measure the distance and the azimuth from the first mine to the second mine and so on until all mine locations are recorded. Continue this procedure for each row. As each mine is recorded, assign it a number to identify it in the tabular block of DA Form 1355-1-R.** h. Measured and recorded the distance and the azimuth from the RP to "B2" and from "B2" to "A2." i. Tied in the RP with a permanent landmark. **NOTE: This landmark may be used to help relocate the minefield if it is abandoned or handed over to another unit.** j. Completed the tabular information blocks. (1) Specified the unit. (2) Specified the precise description of the RP. (3) Recorded the type of markers used to identify the rows. (4) Recorded the map sheet number. (5) Specified the name and signature of the OIC or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC). (6) Recorded the date and time. (7) Specified the method used to measure the minefield; for example, the minefield was paced out and the paces were multiplied by 0.75. 11. The element arms the mines. **NOTE: The minimum safe distance is observed while arming, ensuring that 25 meters are maintained from other personnel and that rows are being armed simultaneously. The minefield must be fenced on all sides if M18A1 AP mines are employed, and the minefield is to be in place for more than 72 hours.**		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Worked from the enemy side or front of the minefield to the friendly side or rear of the minefield. b. Camouflaged the mines, if time permitted. *12. The element leader recovers the mine safeties and the shipping plugs. a. Collected and stored safeties, shipping plugs, and any related items in a waterproof container. b. Placed pins, clips, and associated items 30 centimeters behind the row marker or the RP. c. Recorded the items and their location in the remarks block on DA Form 1355-1-R. d. Informed squad members of the location of DA Form 1355-1-R, shipping plugs, safeties, and related items. *13. The element leader reports the completion of the minefield. a. Reported to the authorizing commander using secured means. b. Submitted the completed DA Form 1355-1-R to the authorizing commander. **NOTE: Digital units place the location of the minefield on the digital overlay and populate the system to provide friendly units situational awareness (SA) in the area of operations (AOs).** *14. The element leader ensures that the minefield is kept under observation at all times to prevent the enemy from breaching or booby-trapping the mines. *15. The element leader establishes a guard to protect friendly troops and to keep noncombatants from entering the mined area. **NOTE: If AP mines (Korea only) are used in the minefield and are to remain in place for longer than 72 hours, the minefield must be fenced on all sides.** *16. The element leader submits additional reports according to the unit SOP or as necessary. a. Submitted oral progress reports during the emplacing process concerning the amount of work completed. b. Submitted a written report of transfer, if the responsibility for the minefield was altered. **NOTE: Digital units can send and receive reports using FM or digital means.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-3210	Direct the Installation of a Hasty Protective Row Minefield

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-3-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield (05-3-0116)
(FM 20-32)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, given an order from higher headquarters (HQ) to remove a hasty protective row minefield that the element emplaced within the assigned sector. Department of the Army (DA) Form 1355-1R of the minefield is available. Personnel and required equipment is available to assist in the removal of the minefield. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All mines are rendered safe and are removed or accounted for without damage to the mines or injury to personnel. All mines are repacked and stored according to the standing operating procedure (SOP). A report of change is filed and maintained until all mines are disarmed and removed. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The tank commander (TC) and the driver provide overwatch and security for personnel removing the minefield. **NOTE: Squad members work together to accomplish this type of mission.**		
* 2. The element leader directs the overwatch elements to a position that affords the best observation of the minefield and beyond. The security force— a. Employed smoke on the farside to conceal mine removal, if necessary. b. Remained in position, overwatching the removal team until the minefield was cleared.		
* 3. The element leader determines the best method for removing the mines. a. Directed the personnel who laid the mines to pick up the same mines, if the minefield was under constant observation from the time it was laid and was not tampered with. Used DA Form 1355-1-R to direct the squad members on the location and the types of mines to be removed. b. Used DA Form 1355-1-R with the mine detectors to direct squad members on the location and the types of mines to be removed, if the minefield was not under constant observation and may have been tampered with or the personnel who laid the mines were not available or did not remember the location of the mines.		
* 4. The element leader retrieves safeties, shipping plugs, and other items that accompanied the emplaced mines.		
5. The removal team takes the safeties and removes the mines within the minefield.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The team starts at the reference point (RP) and moves to B1 using the azimuth and the distance provided on DA Form 1355-1-R. The team then moves from B1 to the mine and removes the mine. If B1 is destroyed, the team moves from the RP to B2 using that azimuth and distance. The team then shoots a back azimuth (subtract 180 degrees) from the recorded azimuth at B2 to the first mine and removes the mine. This process is continued until all the mines are removed. The stakes at A1, B1, A2, and B2 are necessary because its safer to find a stake than to find an armed mine. a. Observed basic safety precautions by maintaining a distance of 30 meters between removal personnel. **NOTE: Removal personnel do not run in the minefield, and only move around in cleared areas.** b. Started with the row closest to the defender and worked away from it. c. Checked the sides and bottoms of mines for antihandling devices (AHDs) and disarmed them as they were found. **NOTE: AHDs are not used in hasty protective row minefields. However, as a safety precaution, all mines are considered to be equipped with AHDs until proven otherwise.** d. Turned the arming dials to SAFE or UNARMED, if applicable. e. Removed the screw type fuze cap, then removed the screw type fuze. f. Removed the shipping plug/dust cover, removed the entire assembly, and replaced the shipping plug/dust cover (fuze assembly). g. Replaced all pins, clips, and other safety devices before the mine was removed from the ground. h. Lifted the mine from the hole after it had been placed on SAFE. (1) Lifted the mine directly from the hole after rendering it safe, if it had been put in place and kept in sight by the individual who removed it. (2) Attached a 60-meter-long rope or wire around the mine, took cover, and pulled the mine from the hole, if the mine had not been kept in sight. i. Placed a tick mark on DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it was removed. 6. The removal team assembles all the mines in one location for accountability. * 7. The element leader confirms the safety of the mines and accounts for the number and types of the mines as recorded on DA Form 1355-1-R. **NOTE: The element leader may find it necessary to confirm an exploded mine to account for all the mines. To confirm a mine explosion, if it is not witnessed, place a tick mark on the DA Form 1355-1-R beside each mine as it is removed. If a crater is found in the vicinity of a mine, ensure that it was caused by the land mine and not artillery. Depending on the size of the mine, a mine crater is shallow, circular, and shows traces of burnt soil. The impact and the soil dispersion of artillery are generally elongated.** 8. The removal team cleans and repacks the mines for future use. **NOTE: This is done only after the element leader confirms that each mine is disarmed and safe.** a. Repacked the mines in their original containers and cased them to keep them functional and safe for future use. b. Stored the mines according to the unit SOP. 9. The removal team removes and stores the row markers for future use. *10. The element leader submits a report of change to higher HQ stating that the minefield has been removed and the area is cleared.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The commander is responsible for the surveillance and maintenance of the minefield and makes a report of change as soon as any mines are removed. *11. The element leader destroys DA Form 1355-1-R after the minefield has been removed and the report of change has been sent. **NOTE: Digital units update the digital overlay to provide current SA.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1021	Locate Mines by Visual Means
052-192-3050	Direct a Mine-Sweeping Party
052-192-3211	Direct the Removal of a Hasty Row Protective Minefield
052-192-4053	Supervise Minefield Breaching Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0025	Report Obstacle Information (Company)
05-2-0111	Conduct Enemy or Unobserved Minefield Clearing Operations
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Construct Wire Obstacles (05-3-0303)
(FM 5-34) (FM 20-32) (FM 5-102)
(FM 90-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a contemporary operating environment. It receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to construct a wire obstacle at an 8-digit grid location to reinforce terrain in support of the scheme of maneuver. The element has the materials and personnel available to construct the wire obstacle. The wire obstacle may be emplaced as a tactical or protective obstacle. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element emplaces the obstacle to standard according to higher headquarters (HQ) requirements (tactical [disrupt, fix, turn, or block] or protective) and the time line specified in the FRAGO or OPORD. The element sites and constructs the obstacle, performs an obstacle turnover, and reports to higher HQ or the supported maneuver unit HQ. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The element updates overlays and provides appropriate Department of the Army (DA) forms according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the applicable standardization agreement (STANAG). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or OPORD to construct a wire obstacle to reinforce terrain in support of the scheme of maneuver. **NOTE: Digital units send orders and reports and perform a map reconnaissance using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit TACSOP.** a. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance, including the route and the terrain. b. Reviewed the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or TACSOP. c. Conducted troop-leading procedures. d. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs). e. Conducted a risk management assessment and a safety briefing according to the unit SOP or TACSOP. f. Requested barrier materials based on the type of wire obstacle to be installed.		
* 2. The element leader prepares to construct a wire obstacle. a. Reconnoitered the site to consider needed security, potential actions on contact, and the accessibility of materials. b. Organized the work party.		
* 3. The element leader and overwatch units site the obstacle as part of the overwatch unit engagement area (EA) development process. **NOTE: Cover the obstacle with direct and/or indirect fire.**		
4. The element constructs the wire obstacle. **NOTE: Digital units report obstacle completion and locations by populating the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System and reporting to higher HQ according to the unit TACSOP.** a. Used triple-standard concertina.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Worked from the enemy side to the friendly side. (2) Spaced the pickets at 3.8-meter (5-pace) intervals. **NOTE: One meter equals 1.3 paces.** (3) Staggered the rear row. (4) Secured the bottom rolls with horizontal wire on both the enemy side and the friendly side. (5) Anchored the horizontal wire to the anchor (short) pickets, 1.5 meters (2 paces) from the end of the long pickets. (6) Secured the top roll, the horizontal wire, and the bottom roll on the friendly side with wire ties midway between pickets. (7) Completed construction within the time standard of 1 squad hour per 100 meters during daylight or 1.5 squad hours per 100 meters in darkness. b. Prepared the knife rest. (1) Prepared a knife rest 3 to 5 meters long. (2) Secured the knife rest to the ground 3 to 5 meters between the cross members with a minimum height of 1.2 meters and tightly lashed it together. (3) Completed construction within the time standard of 1 squad hour per knife rest during daylight or 1.5 squad hours per knife rest in darkness. c. Prepared a double-apron, 4-2 pace fence. (1) Laid the fence centerline. (2) Spaced the long pickets at 3-meter (4-pace) intervals. (3) Spaced anchor pickets 1.5 meters (2 paces) in each direction away from the centerline and midway between the long pickets. (4) Installed all 12 wires working from the enemy side to the friendly side. NOTE: No antitank mines should be placed in the fence. (5) Used the correct wire ties and ensured that all of the wires were tight. (6) Completed construction within the time standard of 3 squad hours per 100 meters during daylight or 4.5 squad hours per 100 meters in darkness. d. Constructed an 11-row, antivehicular wire obstacle. (1) Spaced pickets at 3.8-meter (5-pace) intervals. (2) Placed the concertina wire over the long pickets and placed a log with a diameter of 20 centimeters between the 5th and 6th rows. (3) Anchored the horizontal wires to the anchor stakes, 1.5 meters (2 paces) from each end of the concertina. (4) Ensured that the obstacle was no less than 10 meters (11 rows) deep. (5) Completed construction within the time standard of 1 squad hour during daylight or 2 squad hours in darkness. **NOTE: The time standard given is for entanglements that are 15 meters wide and 10 meters (11 rows) deep.** * 5. The element leader ensures that the wire obstacle meets the commander's intent and requirements. * 6. The element leader submits initiation reports, status updates, and completion reports to higher HQ according to the unit SOP or TACSOP. * 7. The element leader conducts an obstacle turnover to the overwatch unit according to the unit SOP or TACSOP. **NOTE: Refer to field manuals (FMs) for information on how to prepare an obstacle folder for turnover.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-2101	Direct Construction of Wire Entanglements
052-195-3066	Direct Construction of Nonexplosive Obstacles
052-195-3067	Determine Logistical Requirements for Wire Obstacles

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0001	Prepare an Obstacle Plan
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Equipment Sections

TASK: Clear Obstacles With Engineer Equipment (05-3-0767)
(FM 3-34.2) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The maneuver force encounters a series of obstacles and conducts an in-stride breach to pass the attacking forces. The engineer element is directed to clear the obstacles. The element has its organic assets and enough attached equipment to accomplish the task. The area is secure, but enemy contact with squad-size elements or smaller is possible. The maneuver task force (TF) provides security. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Using organic or attached engineer equipment, the element removes designated obstacles as specified in the order. Obstacles must be cleared of mines and booby traps before the removal operation begins. The element accomplishes the mission by the time specified in the order without causing damage to equipment or injury to personnel. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader determines the type, location, and dimensions of the obstacle from information provided by the maneuver force personnel or an obstacle reconnaissance. a. Performed a detailed reconnaissance, time permitting, of the obstacle and surrounding terrain when the maneuver force did not provide enough details. b. Determined the type of obstacle (log, wire, nuclear weapons effect, antiairborne, water or beach rubble, snow or ice, ditches, or craters). c. Determined the obstacle location and dimensions (as a minimum, the depth and frontage).		
2. The element clears the lane or obstacle of all mines and booby traps (as required).		
3. The element fills the antitank (AT) ditch and road craters with organic equipment (armored combat earthmovers [ACEs], a high-mobility engineer excavator [HMEE], bulldozers, scoop loaders, and backhoes). a. Started blade work 30 meters from the depression, making a shallow incline by means of small cuts. b. Cut and filled the AT ditch and road craters until vehicles could cross to the far bank. c. Ensured that, once the depression was filled, the vehicle crossed to the far bank and then cut down the berm with the blade until the incline was traversable by the maneuver unit. d. Compacted the roadway to allow passage of TF vehicles.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. The element clears log obstacles with organic equipment, allowing free passage of wheeled vehicles. a. Removed dug-in logs. (1) Pushed against log posts to break them off. (2) Lifted log posts out of the ground by pushing against them while raising the blade. b. Breached an abatis. (1) Used explosives to remove some of the tree trunks. (2) Drove over the top of the abatis, if branches permitted. (3) Cleared a path on one side by pushing over the tree stumps, if the abatis was too high or wheeled vehicles were to follow. c. Used HMEEs and chain saws, when required, to assist in destroying log and timber obstacles. d. Used explosives to demolish obstacles, and then used an ACE, dozer, or HMEE to push aside debris, allowing free passage of vehicles. 5. The element clears wire obstacles. a. Used an ACE or a dozer. (1) Used the blade to push wire to the side, started at one end of the wire or where the wire had been breached. (2) Pushed the wire at an angle (made numerous passes, if necessary) to stop the wire from becoming entangled in the road wheels. (3) Dug deep enough to remove any pickets, if present. b. Used an HMEE. (1) Backed the vehicle up to the wire. (2) Used the backhoe to rip the wire apart. (3) Lowered the backhoe onto the wire and drove forward dragging the wire along. 6. The element clears rubble obstacles. a. Used the blade on an ACE or dozer to push the rubble aside. (1) Cut rubble away to one side if the pile of rubble was too large to move in one pass, and removed the rubble by spreading on successive passes. (2) Cut through the top of the rubble when the sides of the pile of rubble were not exposed and worked down until it was breached or removed. (3) Formed a ramp, by pushing and loosening the rubble when the top of the pile of rubble was too high to reach, and then backbladed with down pressure. Repeated the procedure until the top was reached. (4) Used the bucket on the HMEE or ACE to pick up rubble and remove it. 7. The element clears the contaminated area. a. Used the blade on an ACE or dozer to dig up contaminated dirt and either remove it or push it aside. b. Used the bucket on the HMEE to dig up contaminated dirt and remove it. c. Decontaminated the vehicle. 8. The element breaches the minefield. a. Breached the minefield manually. b. Used an ACE to breach the minefield. **NOTE: Using the ACE to breach a minefield is a last resort. It is not recommended nor is it the primary use for the vehicle. To prevent damage, the angled, herringbone-skimming technique should be used.** (1) Secured the hatch and ensured that no one was on the outside of the vehicle.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Began operating about 10 meters from the minefield edge with the blade placed at a 2- to 4-inch cut. (3) Pushed forward to the left or right at least three vehicle lengths and stopped. (4) Backed off to where the breaching started, performed the same cut, and pushed in the opposite direction. (5) Backed off again and made the same cut, overlapped the first cut to ensure that no area was missed, and extended it at least one vehicle length beyond the first cut. (6) Repeated the above process until the vehicle had cleared a path through the minefield. **NOTE: Adjust the height of the blade so that no surface is left unscraped in the ACE pass through the minefield. Give special attention to a washboard or otherwise uneven terrain.** * 9. The element leader reports mission completion to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-192-1127	Prepare an AN/PSS-12 Mine Detector for Operation
052-192-3034	Direct a Deliberate Minefield Reconnaissance Patrol
052-192-3050	Direct a Mine-Sweeping Party
052-192-3060	Conduct a Breach of a Minefield
052-192-4045	Conduct Route Sweep Operations
052-192-4052	Supervise Minefield Clearing Operations
052-193-2030	Clear Misfires
052-193-3022	Calculate Timber-Cutting Charges
052-193-3023	Calculate Steel-Cutting Charges
052-193-3024	Calculate Breaching Charges
052-193-3054	Prepare a Demolition Reconnaissance Report
052-227-3302	Direct Armored Combat Earthmover (ACE) Dozer/Scraper Operations

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0408	Plan and Direct an Engineer Reconnaissance
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Establish Jobsite Security (05-3-0904.05-R01A)
(FM 7-8) (FM 3-90.1) (FM 5-10)
(FM 5-34) (FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the element receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) or an operation order (OPORD) to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. Security elements are coordinated. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element establishes local security and tenable defensive positions that provide early warning and protection from an enemy attack. The presence of the enemy is not a surprise. The only time restraints are those specified in the FRAGO or the OPORD. Digital units submit reports and locations using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA) to conduct combat operations. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives a FRAGO or an OPORD to conduct a tactical mission at an 8-digit grid location. a. Conducted a mission analysis. (1) If a maneuver force was providing security, the element followed procedures beginning with task step 4. (2) If the unit was working alone or was in an isolated area, the element leader designated overwatch and reconnaissance/minesweeping teams and followed procedures beginning with task step 2. b. Conducted a thorough map reconnaissance. **NOTE: Digital units request intelligence information by requesting All-Source Analysis System (ASAS) information and Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) products from higher headquarters (HQ).** c. Reviewed the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) or standing operating procedure (SOP). d. Conducted troop-leading procedures. e. Conducted precombat checks (PCCs) and precombat inspections (PCIs).		
* 2. The element occupies a stationary overwatch position at the site. The overwatch team leader— a. Selected a covered and concealed position. b. Assigned a sector of observation and fire. c. Directed the overwatch team to use all available sights and other visual devices to scan the sector and identify enemy forces.		
3. The reconnaissance/minesweeping team secures the site. a. Checked for a possible enemy ambush at the site.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Located, marked, and reported any mines or unexploded ordnance (UXO) on the site. The chain of command reported the hazard to explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) personnel for disposal. 4. The element moves into and occupies the position after the site is clear. * 5. The element leader reconnoiters tentative fighting positions. a. Identified avenues of approach. b. Identified observation posts (OP) or patrol routes to secure the perimeter. c. Identified crew-served weapons positions. d. Established withdrawal routes. e. Identified dismounted personnel positions. f. Positioned vehicles in covered and concealed positions. g. Established sectors of fire and general positions for crew-served weapons and vehicles. h. Designated which fighting positions (OPs or patrols) would be manned full time. i. The patrol or OP team moved to an assigned position. The patrol or OP team— (1) Provided early warning and close-in security. (2) Offered cover and concealment for occupants. (3) Established a concealed route leading to and away from the OP. (4) Operated according to the unit TACSOP or SOP until relieved. (5) Maintained communications with the command post. j. Supervised the positioning of the chemical alarm. (1) Placed the alarm 150 meters upwind from the unit. (2) Ensured that the alarm was within visible site of the elements position to prevent it from being tampered with by the enemy. (3) Did not place the alarm in a depression. (4) Moved the chemical alarm if the wind shifted. k. Subordinate leaders designated individual positions. (1) Designated primary fighting positions. (2) Designated alternate fighting positions. (3) Established sectors of fire for each individual and ensured that individual range cards and element sector sketches were complete according to the unit TACSOP or SOP. **NOTE: The unit TACSOP or SOP should have a set time standard for completing the range cards and sector sketches.** l. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force and higher HQ. m. Emplaced protective obstacles, if required, based on the five-step risk management process. **NOTE: The unit should establish alert procedures and rehearse the procedures on site with a 100 percent occupation of the position.** 6. The element begins work. a. Kept individual weapons within close reach. b. Maintained noise and light discipline. c. Maintained camouflage procedures. d. Maintained the directed MOPP level. e. Maintained communications with the supported maneuver force or higher HQ. **NOTE: Digital units send reports and update the COP using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or FM means according to the unit TACSOP.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-194-3500	Conduct a Patrol

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0301	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
05-2-0908	Conduct Quartering Party Operations
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Prepare Crew-Served Weapons Fighting Positions (05-5-0302)
(FM 5-34) (FM 5-103)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the crew must construct its own crew-served weapons fighting position using organic equipment. The element leader has selected and approved the location. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The crew constructs crew-served weapons fighting positions providing coverage for the sector of fire and final protective line (FPL) and protection from direct and indirect fire. The position does not restrict the operational capability of the weapon system. Digital units submit reports of their locations and positions using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and the situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element constructs a machine gun position that has a primary and secondary sector of fire and reports intermediate status and completion to the element leader. **NOTE: Digital units populate the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System with the location of the unit to provide current SA.** a. Constructed the position so that the gun fires to the front or oblique (firing across the front of the unit) with the oblique being the primary sector of fire. b. Constructed the position in an inverted T shape with a firing platform in each corner. c. Used the tripod on the side with the primary sector of fire and the bipod with the secondary sector of fire. d. Used the earth removed during the construction of the position to provide frontal and flank protection, ensuring that it did not interfere with the sectors of fire. e. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers when they were operating the weapon. f. Shaped the hole so that both the gunner and the assistant gunner could get to the weapon. g. Reduced the height of the weapon by digging the tripod platform down, as much as possible, but kept the weapon traversable across the entire sector of fire. **NOTE: Refer to the appropriate technical manual (TM) or field manual (FM) to ensure adherence to proper clearances.**		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Constructed a one-soldier supplemental fighting position to the flank for the ammunition bearer when there was a three-soldier crew for a machine gun. The crew connected this position to the gun position by digging a crawl trench. i. Constructed the position to armpit depth and sloped the floor outward toward each end of the hole. j. Constructed grenade sumps the width of the spade and the depth of one entrenching tool length at both ends of the hole. k. Built the overhead cover 46 centimeters thick over the middle of the position, when possible. l. Improved the position, if time permitted, by adding cover, digging trenches to adjacent positions, and maintaining camouflage. m. Completed the position in 7 man-hours without overhead cover or 12 man-hours with overhead cover. 2. The element constructs a machine gun position without a secondary sector of fire and reports intermediate status and completion to the squad leader. a. Constructed the position in a V shape with the firing position in the apex of the V. b. Constructed the position following the procedures in subtasks 1d to 1k. Completed it in 6 man-hours without overhead cover or 11 man-hours with overhead cover. 3. The element constructs a Javelin position and reports intermediate status and completion to the element leader. a. Used earth removed during the construction of the position for frontal and flank protection. However, left both the muzzle blast and backblast areas clear of obstacles to prevent round deflection, fires, and pressure buildup. Cleared the backblast area of highly combustible material to a distance of 5 meters and was either level or sloping down and away from the position. **NOTE: Caution should be used in the placement of the Javelin. The four caution areas for the backblast and possibilities for overpressure in the position are some concerns. The primary danger zone extends 25 meters to the rear at a 60-degree angle from the rear of the weapon. Not paying attention to these cautions could cause death or serious injury to personnel in danger areas.** b. Ensured that it was high enough to cover both soldiers if the element built cover on the flanks. c. Constructed the fighting position to armpit depth and sloped the floor down toward each end of the hole. d. Constructed grenade sumps the width of the spade and the depth of one entrenching tool length at both ends of the hole. e. Ensured that the position width was narrow enough so that the rear of the weapon extended over the rear of the hole when the soldier firing the Javelin stood at the front of the position. f. Improved the position, if time permitted, by digging trenches to adjacent positions and maintaining camouflage. **NOTE: Overhead cover is desired only if it protects the crew when they are not firing the weapon (due to the large backblast).** g. Completed the position in 6 man-hours. 4. Prepared a range card and submitted it to the element leader.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-195-2000	Direct Construction of Fighting Positions in Field
052-195-3065	Direct Construction of Field Fortifications

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)
05-4-1371	Provide Terrain Analysis Information

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Establish a Company Defensive Position (07-2-0414.05-T01A)
(FM 7-10) (FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1) (TC 24-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has received an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) mission requiring the unit to provide its own security and defense. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The opposing forces (OPFOR) elements, consisting of as much as a motorized rifle company or airborne equivalent, have been active in friendly rear areas. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element completes all preparations for the defense within the time specified by the OPORD. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The company is not surprised by the OPFOR, suffers no casualties from friendly fire, and repels the OPFOR attacks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The elements execute the following tasks when the company is performing this task: Establish Unit Defense, Defend the Unit's Position, Construct a Protective Obstacle, and Conduct Hasty Minefield Operations.		
* 1. The commander develops a defensive plan according to the OPORD or the FRAGO. a. Established sectors or boundaries for the subordinate elements. b. Assigned battle positions for the company elements. c. Designated primary, alternate, and supplementary positions. d. Designated engagement areas (EAs). e. Developed the fire support (FS) plan, including the target reference points (TRPs) forward, within, and to the rear of the defensive position.		
* 2. The commander conducts a leader's reconnaissance with key company leaders. a. Established local security. b. Confirmed or modified his plan.		
* 3. Leaders survey the terrain to finalize their defensive plans. a. Identified the covered and concealed routes to and between all positions. b. Identified all avenues of approach (AAs). c. Identified dead space. d. Requested indirect FS to cover the dead space and the likely AAs. **NOTE: Digital units request indirect FS using the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or FM means according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).** e. Identified locations for the company command post (CP), observation posts (OPs), the supply point, and the company casualty collection point. f. Identified potential landing zones (LZs) that the enemy could use for an air assault.		
* 4. The commander designates unit positions or sectors. a. Concentrated fire on the most dangerous and most likely AAs.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Selected positions with good fields of fire and observation of enemy ground and air forces. c. Provided cover and concealment. d. Permitted adequate lateral and in-depth dispersion. 5. The company establishes unit security. a. Established the OPs and the air guards. b. Conducted patrols in areas that could not be observed. c. Emplaced early-warning devices. d. Conducted stand-to procedures according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or order. * 6. Leaders position key weapons and establish fields of fire. a. Oriented the units to provide all-around security. b. Ensured that the weapons covered the most dangerous AAs, EAs, or selected kill zones based on the defensive technique. c. Effected mutual support between elements. d. Ensured that the antiarmor weapons covered the likely armor AAs. e. Registered indirect fire and final protection fires (FPFs) on the most dangerous dismounted AAs, where possible. * 7. Leaders check the position for potential problems. a. Walked the positions and adjusted for fields of fire. b. Walked the terrain in front of the positions to determine if personnel accomplished their assigned tasks. * 8. The leaders coordinate with flank elements. a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy AAs. b. Exchanged information on the OP locations, patrols, unit signals, and passage points. 9. The commander coordinated a withdrawal plan. 10. The company establishes communications, if available. a. Used wire as the primary communications, if available. b. Ensured that the platoon or company CP had communication with the OPs, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and FS team. c. Conducted periodic communications checks to ensure that all communications equipment was operational. d. Planned and provided for an alternate means of communications. 11. The company emplaces minefields and obstacles. a. Requested and received clearance to lay protective minefields. b. Emplaced mines or obstacles according to the company obstacle plan and recorded the minefield on the standard minefield form. c. Covered mines or obstacles by observation and direct and indirect fires. d. Reported the location of mines or obstacles to all elements, and forwarded the standard minefield record to the next higher command as soon as possible. 12. The company defends against an enemy assault. a. Detected and reported enemy contact by the OPs. b. Withdrew the OPs on order or according to the company SOP. c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements closed to within range of each individual or the weapons system. *13. The commander or forward observer (FO) defends against an enemy assault.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Called for and engaged the attacking force with indirect fire according to the company's SOP. b. Requested FPF from the supporting indirect-fire units as the enemy neared the final protective line (FPL).		
*14. The commander defends against an enemy assault. a. Initiated direct-fire engagement of the attacking force according to the unit SOP. b. Executed the obstacle plan according to the battalion OPORD or FRAGO. c. Increased the intensity of defensive fires as the enemy elements closed to within range of additional weapons.		
15. The company consolidates and reorganizes during lulls in the fighting. a. Executed platoon consolidation and reorganization. b. Treated and evacuated casualties. c. Transmitted the status report, and requested replacement personnel. d. Requested resupply. e. Replaced damaged barriers and obstacles. f. Restored communication. g. Repositioned the OPs that were withdrawn during the engagement. h. Resumed security and patrolling activities.		
16. The company continues to defend. a. Forced the enemy to withdraw. b. Disengaged by order of higher headquarters (HQ). c. Ordered the reposition of platoons to alternate or supplementary positions as needed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0510	Direct Survivability Construction
05-2-0518	Control Construction of Survivability Positions
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-3-0115.05-R01A	Emplace a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-3-0116	Remove a Hasty Protective Row Minefield
05-3-0230	Construct a Protective Obstacle
05-3-0303	Construct Wire Obstacles
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-0110.05-R01A	Mark a Minefield
05-6-0094	Plan Engineer Survivability Operations
19-1-2001	Coordinate Area Security Operations
19-1-2203	Direct Site Security Operations
19-3-2204.05-T01A	Employ Physical Security Measures
71-2-0332.05-T01A	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Pipeline Construction Platoon Headquarters
Nine Pipeline Construction Squads
Support Platoon Headquarters
Equipment Section
Maintenance Section
Radiographic Welding Inspection Team
Operations Section

TASK: React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) (09-2-0337.05-T01A)
(FM 21-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: During combat operations, the unit encounters a UXO hazard. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element reacts to the UXO hazard while continuing the mission, without loss of personnel or equipment. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element recognizes the UXO hazard. a. Identified the UXO by type. b. Identified the UXO by subgroup. c. Observed all safety precautions.		
* 2. The element leader takes immediate action for the UXO hazard. a. Evacuated the area as appropriate. b. Determined the appropriate action. (1) Avoided the UXO hazard. (2) Instituted protective measures.		
* 3. The element leader designates the element to mark the area. a. Chose leaders to mark the area. b. Briefed leaders on the area to be marked.		
* 4. The element marks the UXO hazard. a. Marked all the logical approach routes. b. Ensured that the UXO was visible from all markers.		
* 5. The element reports the UXO hazard. a. Initiated the UXO spot report. b. Determined the priority based on the current situation. c. Forwarded the report to the next higher headquarters (HQ) by the fastest means available.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Employ Physical Security Measures (19-3-2204.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19.30) (FM 3-19.4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: An opposing forces (OPFOR) squad-size patrol attempts reconnaissance or intrusion into the command post (CP) perimeter. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element maintains 24-hour security in its assigned sector and is not surprised by the OPFOR.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader prepares a physical security plan. a. Controlled the entry of vehicles into the CP. b. Developed procedures for selecting and manning perimeter positions. c. Developed procedures for detecting and reporting OPFOR intrusion or observation of the CP perimeter. d. Controlled access to the element defensive areas. e. Established communications links between observation posts (OPs) and the reaction force. f. Developed procedures for initial response to ground attacks. 2. The element operates a guard force. a. Established communications with the guard commander. b. Stopped unauthorized entry into restricted areas. c. Conducted random exterior patrols to find and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breached the CP perimeter. 3. The element reacts to an OPFOR ground attack. a. Assumed preplanned positions. b. Denied intrusion into the CP perimeter.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.05-T01A)
(FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)
(FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The element weapon control status (WCS) is weapons hold. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The opposing forces (OPFOR) element aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, and UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position. a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, and dispersion) to hide personnel and equipment to limit vulnerability. **NOTE: The unit achieves air situational awareness (SA) by monitoring with simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs).** b. Covered or shaded any shiny items, particularly windshields and optics. c. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms. d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to an air attack. e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment. f. Manned observation posts (OPs), daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms. g. Established a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if the equipment was available and operational.		
* 2. The element leader uses passive air defense measures in a convoy. a. Ensured that all personnel received the convoy commander's briefing. b. Camouflaged vehicles and equipment before moving out. c. Selected a column interval based on instructions, the mission, and the terrain. d. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the avenues of approach (front, rear, and flank). e. Assigned soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360°. f. Identified threat aerial platforms visually.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Reported all aircraft actions to the higher headquarters (HQ). h. Established and rehearsed the air attack alarms. 3. Element personnel use passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing a position. a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order. b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns. c. Assigned air guards to the sectors of search that covered 360°, and maintained the coverage until the convoy completed the movement. d. Identified threat aerial platforms visually. e. Reported all aircraft actions to higher HQ. f. Established the vehicle order of precedence.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Take Active Combined Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.05-T01A)
(FM 44-100) (FM 44-64) (FM 44-8)
(FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives an early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms. The element is in a tactical position. The weapon control status (WCS) is weapons tight. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element destroys or forces attacking aerial platforms away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against the hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit. a. Gave the air attack alarm. b. Organized the element to defensive positions. c. Ordered a search of the assigned sectors for aerial platforms. d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to higher headquarters (HQ). **NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, consider the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The element must positively and visually identify aerial platforms before engaging with small arms, unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act.** **DANGER: MUNITIONS CANNOT DISTINGUISH BETWEEN FRIEND AND FOE. REVIEW ALL AIRSPACE CONTROL MEASURES. PERFORM ALL PRECAUTIONARY MEASURES TO ENSURE THAT THE MUNITIONS FIRED DO NOT CAUSE INJURY OR DEATH TO FRIENDLY FORCES OR DAMAGE TO ALLIED EQUIPMENT. EVEN COMPUTERIZED SYSTEMS REQUIRE CLOSE OBSERVATION.** e. Made the engagement decision. f. Engaged the element in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns. **NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the element position.**		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Performed all precautionary measures to ensure that no fratricide occurred during the engagement. h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement. i. Sent the PIR to higher HQ. **NOTES:** **1. Aim points for propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for helicopters.** **2. Select the aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals about 91 meters.** **3. Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons at the aim point until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts.** **4. Establish preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position.** **5. Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire (a coordinated, high volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through) will achieve the desired results.** **TYPE OF AERIAL PLATFORMS — COURSE — AIM POINT** **Jet/cruise missile — Crossing — Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose** **Jet/cruise missile — Overhead — Two football fields in front of the aerial platform nose** **Jet/cruise missile — Directly at you — Slightly above the aerial platform nose** **Helicopter/UAV — Crossing — One-half football field in front of the aerial platform nose** **Helicopter/UAV — Directly at you — Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body** **Helicopter/UAV — Hovering — Slightly above the helicopter/UAV body** j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by the unit commander. * 2. Leaders direct small arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target. a. Gave the air attack alarm. b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth or had the vehicle operators continue to move the unit. c. Moved vehicles to covered and concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion. d. Engaged nonattacking aircraft only as directed. e. Identified threat aerial platforms visually. f. Reported all aerial platform actions to higher HQ. g. Prepared the element to engage on orders of the senior leader. h. Engaged the element (when ordered to do so by the senior leader) in attacking the aerial platforms with all available small arms. i. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 3. Leaders direct combined arms air defense measures against aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit. a. Gave the air attack alarm. b. Engaged all available personnel immediately in attacking the aerial platforms per the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). c. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement. d. Ensured that soldiers assigned to observation posts (OPs) continued to scan their assigned sectors. e. Reported any aircraft action to higher HQ. f. Reported any casualties to higher HQ. g. Evaluated the situation and moved the element position as directed by the tactical situation or the TACSOP.		
* 4. The element leader or noncommissioned officers (NCOs) direct small arms air defense measures during the convoy movement. a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack. b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road or off the road if possible. Turned to covered and concealed positions, if the terrain permitted. c. Maintained vehicle intervals or increased the interval or dispersion by using evasive driving techniques. d. Ordered the element to dismount and take up firing positions. e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or automatically returned fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking. f. Identified aerial platforms. g. Engaged the element in attacking aerial platforms with all available small arms, such as rifles and machine guns. h. Directed soldiers to reload weapons following the engagement. i. Reported the attack and submitted the PIR to higher HQ. j. Reported any casualties to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Perform Risk Management Procedures (71-2-0326.05-T01A)
(AR 385-10) (FM 25-100) (FM 3-0)
(FM 7-0)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is deployed, performing its combat mission. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Leaders and soldiers are aware of potential safety problems when conducting the task. The element trains to standard and does not take shortcuts that endanger element members. All risks taken are necessary to accomplish the training objectives. Appropriate measures are taken to minimize risks. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander identifies the risk or safety hazards. a. Analyzed the operation plan (OPLAN), the fragmentary order (FRAGO), and the operation order (OPORD) for specified and implied missions (tasks). b. Integrated safety into every phase of the planning process. c. Assessed the risks before issuing a FRAGO when the mission or conditions changed.		
* 2. Leaders evaluate the risk or safety hazards identified in the operation. a. Compared the risk to the acceptable level of risk in the commander's intent, based on the stated training objective. b. Determined the likelihood of equipment and personnel losses from accidents. c. Described the operation in terms of high, medium, or low risk. d. Prepared courses of action (COAs) that minimized accidental losses.		
* 3. The commander (or leaders) eliminates or reduces the risk or safety hazards. a. Chose a COA that maximized the operation and minimized the risk. b. Developed procedures that reduced the risk or safety hazards. c. Prescribed the safety or protective equipment. d. Briefed the elements before all operations.		
4. The element carries out safety procedures. a. Received safety briefings before all operations. b. Practiced the safety procedures during all mission rehearsals. c. Made on-spot safety corrections.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTES: **1. Safety is a part of realism, and realism includes building safety into the training so that safe practices, which eliminate accidents, become second nature during war (refer to Field Manual [FM] 25-100).** **2. FM 3-0 emphasizes the need for boldness and that commanders must take "risks and tenaciously press soldiers and systems" as an imperative of the battle. However, such an imperative is founded on the premise that protecting the force to the maximum extent possible ensures winning the battle. Risk is an expression of possible loss over a specific period of time or number of operational cycles as defined by the Center for Army Safety.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies (05-2-0042)
(FM 63-1) (FM 4-93.4) (FM 63-2)
(FM 63-20) (FM 63-21) (FM 63-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is supporting a maneuver force. The maneuver Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) requests supplies to implement the unit obstacle plan and arranges for the supplies to be throughput to the task force (TF) area. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational to request supplies for combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company receives and distributes Class IV/Class V (engineer) throughput supplies to sustain platoon operations without impeding the mission accomplishment. Digital units send and receive requests for throughput supplies using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit receives throughput supplies.		
* 2. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) determines the supply point and linkup point locations. a. Ensured that the locations were covered, concealed, and convenient to the platoon work sites. b. Identified a linkup point with the supporting CSS element. Ensured that the location was easily identifiable and located on or near a main supply route (MSR). c. Designated a guide at the linkup point.		
3. The unit off-loads the supplies.		
* 4. The XO or the 1SG plans coordination. a. Coordinated material-handling equipment (MHE). b. Coordinated troop labor, if needed.		
5. The unit loads the supplies on company vehicles or establishes a holding area. a. Coordinated for additional trucks, if needed. b. Designated parking or holding areas that allowed for dispersion, camouflage, cover and concealment, and good access and egress routes.		
6. The unit establishes control measures for the movement.		
7. The unit establishes a storage site to protect the supplies from the elements and provide security.		
8. The unit distributes the supplies using the supply point distribution or the unit distribution method. a. Used the supply point distribution method. (1) Identified items needed for the engineer platoon tasks. (2) Established a pickup schedule. (3) Notified the platoons of the time and place of issue.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Organized available MHE, if required. (5) Issued supplies. (6) Obtained new requests from the platoons. b. Used the unit distribution method. (1) Identified items needed for the engineer platoon tasks. (2) Established a resupply sequence. (3) Uploaded the supply vehicles using reverse loading. (4) Established a linkup point and time with the platoons. If the platoons were in the battlefield or TF area, coordinated with the battalion or TF S4 for logistics package (LOGPAC) operations. (5) Issued supplies. (6) Obtained new requests from the platoons. **NOTE: Digital units can forward supply requests through the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System to higher headquarters (HQ). The locations for issue are plotted on the digital overlay.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Pipeline Construction Platoon Headquarters
Support Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Conduct Area Damage Control (ADC) Operations (05-2-0735)
(FM 5-100) (FM 24-18) (FM 24-35)
(FM 24-35-1) (FM 5-104) (FM 5-116)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has been tasked to conduct ADC operations in a designated area. The battalion has developed and implemented an ADC plan (to include task/repair standards) and gives the company the initial reconnaissance report. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The commander plans operations, establishes priorities, and allocates assets to minimize area damage before, during, and after hostile action. Preventive actions are taken and construction projects are performed in the area under the control of and in the priority established by the commander. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander, assisted by the headquarters (HQ) element, establishes communications with the supported rear operations command element (either a base, base cluster, or rear-area operations center (RAOC). a. Ensured that the engineer unit established communications with the supported unit through either normal signal channels, frequency modulated (FM), landline, or multichannel or with a liaison officer making regular checks with the supported command element. b. Ensured that the communications channel was operational for immediate communications. c. Ensured that the liaison officer coordinated engineer unit plans with the ADC requirements of the supported element.		
* 2. The company commander and staff perform an engineer estimate with special ADC considerations. a. Identified and prioritized all potential tasks. b. Determined what specialized engineer support, beyond the capability of the company, was required. c. Determined preventive actions to take before an incident. (1) Stockpiled materials. (2) Located alternate routes. (3) Identified replacement facilities. (4) Performed other tasks as appropriate. d. Identified host nation (HN) assets and other units that were required or available. e. Developed a plan to perform each task starting with the highest priority. The plan included— (1) Specific platoon assignments. (2) A probable bill of materials (BOM). (3) The allocation of special materials, equipment, and support. f. Specified quality standards for the repair.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 3. The company commander assigns prescriptive tasks to platoons before the event occurs. a. Performed an on-site reconnaissance. b. Developed repair contingency plans. c. Located and stockpiled material. * 4. The company commander requests required assets from the higher echelon supported command and coordinates linkup. * 5. The company commander coordinates with the HN for assets that will be involved in the repair. 6. The company and platoons execute ADC repair. a. Completed the repair— (1) According to the quality standards specified in the battalion ADC plan. (2) With the minimum effort required to accomplish the mission. No work was done that was within the capability of the supported unit to accomplish. b. Constructed an expedient (alternate) facility/bypass while the repair was being accomplished, if required to maintain operations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0045	Control Airfield Damage Repair Operations
05-1-0732	Prepare Air Base Damage Repair Estimate
05-2-0002	Prepare an Engineer Estimate (Company)
05-2-0037	Conduct Air Base Damage Repair (ADR) Operations
05-2-0702	Repair Airfields
05-2-0860	Repair a Pipeline
05-2-0888	Construct Harbor Craft Repair Facilities
05-3-0611	Construct/Repair a Bridge Abutment
05-3-0707	Reinforce/Repair Existing Bridges
05-3-0711	Clear Airfields
05-3-0765	Construct or Repair a Sewerage System
05-3-0778	Construct or Repair a Steel Frame Preengineered Structure
05-3-0780	Conduct Runway/Taxiway Crater Repair
05-3-0784	Construct/Repair Headwalls

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0787	Construct/Repair a Wood Frame Structure
05-3-0789	Construct/Repair a Concrete Structure
05-3-0790	Construct/Repair Electrical Utilities
05-3-0791	Construct/Repair a Water Distribution System
05-5-0953	Repair Underwater Structures
05-5-0959	Perform Ships Husbandry
05-5-1041	Perform Battle-Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR)
05-6-0084	Coordinate Engineer Support with Host Nation (HN)/Coalition Representative

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Conduct Administrative Operations (05-2-1007)
(FM 12-6) (DA FORM 1155) (DA FORM 1156)
(DA FORM 2166-8) (DA FORM 2166-8-1) (DA FORM 67-9)
(FM 21-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is operating in a tactical environment with replacement personnel arriving. The company headquarters (HQ) has all assigned personnel; equipment; and required forms, manuals, and standing operating procedures (SOPs). Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company integrates the replacement personnel. The company prepares and submits personnel reports and actions while sustaining operations and providing for the discipline, health, welfare, and morale of all assigned personnel. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The company commander integrates replacement personnel and assigns them to subordinate elements within the company. a. Oriented replacement personnel before their assignment. (1) Identified the unit mission and the current situation. (2) Explained the chain-of-command procedures. (3) Explained the warning system, safety, and security procedures. b. Assigned replacement personnel on a priority basis.		
2. Company personnel prepare the personnel daily summary (PDS). a. Consolidated the subordinate element data. b. Prepared the PDS. c. Submitted the PDS to the battalion personnel and administration center (PAC).		
3. Company personnel process Department of the Army (DA) Forms 1155 and 1156. a. Posted and maintained the unit casualty record. b. Posted and maintained DA Form 1156.		
* 4. Company leaders in the chain of command review and verify the completed DA Forms 1155, and submit the reports to the battalion PAC.		
* 5. Company leaders initiate actions to request awards or promotions.		
* 6. Company leaders coordinate individual requests for administrative actions requiring approval from higher HQ. a. Adhered to the local battalion PAC policies. b. Relayed all duty statuses and other actions to the battalion PAC for processing. c. Coordinated all finance actions through the battalion PAC and the finance office. d. Approved or disapproved personal administrative actions (pass, leave, and emergency leave).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 7. Company leaders initiate judicial and nonjudicial punishment actions. a. Drafted a summary of the incident or violation. b. Obtained and assembled investigation reports and witness statements. c. Reviewed the incident or violation to determine the best course of action (COA). d. Administered nonjudicial punishment.		
* 8. Company leaders monitor personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures. a. Ensured that the means were available for obtaining assistance (according to the SOP). b. Coordinated with higher HQ for morale and personnel support.		
* 9. The company commander initiates DA Form 67-9.		
*10. The platoon leader/sergeant initiates DA Forms 2166-8 and 2166-8-1. a. Drafted work sheets for the noncommissioned officer (NCO) checklist/record and the noncommissioned officer evaluation report (NCOER). b. Forwarded the draft work sheets to the battalion PAC. c. Maintained the appropriate privacy measures during all stages of the process.		
*11. Company leaders coordinate the medical and dental treatment of all assigned personnel (for nonbattle injuries). a. Ensured that the procedures for medical and dental assistance were coordinated with higher HQ. b. Adhered to the medical or dental evaluation of the medical or dental authority.		
*12. Company leaders coordinate for chaplain assistance. a. Coordinated the presentation of religious services. b. Advised personnel on how to obtain chaplain assistance.		
*13. Company leaders coordinate for Red Cross assistance. a. Advised personnel on how to obtain Red Cross assistance. b. Recommended personnel for Red Cross assistance.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Conduct Combat Refueling Operations (05-2-1024)
(FM 10-67-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: A unit is conducting refueling operations. The unit to be refueled has selected and secured a refueling area. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit refuels vehicles without affecting ongoing operations. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The executive officer (XO) or the first sergeant (1SG) organizes a refueling operation. a. Coordinated with the next higher supply activity for bulk-fuel supply according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Established a refueling schedule for engineer equipment (high-consumption vehicles). Modified the schedule, as needed, to ensure that the company accomplished critical missions. c. Coordinated with supporting units for additional refueling support, as needed. d. Selected a refueling point centralized to the work sites that had good cover and concealment locations and good ingress and egress routes. **NOTE: Digital units use either FM or digital systems (Army Battle Command System [ABCS]) to update the digital overlay of the refueling location and send the location to the elements requiring fuel and supporting units.** 2. Refueling personnel support the unit according to the established schedule. 3. Refueling personnel establish the fuel point. a. Grounded the fuel truck using the procedures specified in the appropriate technical manual (TM). b. Positioned fire extinguishers in a readily available location. c. Established traffic control patterns to minimize congestion. 4. Element personnel conduct refueling operations. a. Turned off the vehicles engine. b. Grounded the fuel truck to the refueling vehicle. c. Issued packaged petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL), as needed. d. Maintained dispersion based on the terrain with a minimum spacing of 50 meters. e. Maintained noise and light discipline. f. Observed safety procedures. * 5. The XO or the 1SG coordinates bulk refueling for the fuel truck. a. Identified the location of bulk-refueling points. b. Coordinated for additional bulk refueling, if needed. c. Restocked onboard packaged POL.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. Element leaders monitor the refueling process. * 7. The XO or the 1SG updates the fuel forecast with the battalion task force (TF) Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1068	Coordinate the Location of Class IV and Class V Supply Points
05-3-1600	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Equipment Sections

TASK: Conduct Clearing, Grubbing, and Stripping Operations (05-3-0762)
(FM 5-430-00-1) (FM 5-430-00-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element receives the mission to clear, grub, and strip a site for a construction project. The boundaries of the site have been established and equipment is available. Plans and specifications are provided. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon removes all unwanted vegetation and obstacles from the site. The site is prepared for follow-on construction. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader conducts troop-leading procedures. a. Verified the accuracy of the construction plans and specifications. b. Designated the boundaries for clearing. c. Located disposal areas based on the shortest haul, the downgrade slope, effective camouflage, and accessibility. d. Conducted platoon movement after the operation order (OPORD) was issued to subordinates and all preparations were completed.		
* 2. The element leader/sergeant establishes jobsite security.		
* 3. The element leader submits requests for changes to improve or correct construction plans and specifications according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP), when needed.		
4. The platoon clears and grubs using dozers. a. Avoided removing or breaking off trees and bushes outside the designated clear area to aid in camouflaging the construction site. b. Sequenced operations depending on the type of trees, the terrain, and the construction to follow. c. Began clearing at the disposal area and moved away from it. d. Used one or two dozers to clear small trees and brush first. e. Used a second pair of dozers to remove larger trees and stumps bypassed by the first unit. f. Used more dozers for a third cycle to remove the heaviest material, if necessary. g. Removed all unwanted vegetation and obstacles from the site. h. Uprooted and removed all trees not needed on the site. i. Pushed or pulled cleared material to the disposal area. j. Used other types of equipment, if available, that were most effective in multiple operations, such as power saws to fall large trees and clearing units to uproot large stumps and work in areas inaccessible to dozers.		
5. The platoon performs light clearing operations using graders.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Removed grass, weeds, small bushes, and dead vegetation. b. Windrowed cleared materials. c. Cleared the area for drainage. 6. The platoon salvages the timber. a. Trimmed timber to be used for logs, piles, and lumber. b. Stockpiled timber for future use in bridge, culvert, and other types of construction. 7. The platoon constructs temporary drainage. a. Developed a drainage system before or concurrent with other construction. b. Used original or natural drainage features. c. Constructed ditches if heavy rain was expected or earthwork was delayed. d. Filled and compacted all holes to prevent accumulation of surface water. 8. The platoon performs stripping operations. a. Performed stripping operations concurrently with clearing and grubbing operations. b. Removed and disposed of topsoil and sod, which would be objectionable as a subgrade. c. Removed the unsuitable material in shallow fill sections of 0.6 meters or less to a depth great enough to enable placing at least 0.9 meters of suitable subgrade material. d. Stockpiled all good topsoil and sod for later use, if needed. 9. The platoon disposes of cleared material. a. Selected a disposal method consistent with the camouflage, salvage, and drainage needs of the clearing operation. (1) Pushed or skidded the material off the construction site into the surrounding timber. (2) Piled or dumped material adjacent to the work area. (3) Constructed an off-site disposal area by clearing a portion of the adjacent land. (4) Used cleared material as fill-in revetment construction, if required. (5) Disposed of debris under favorable conditions by burning according to the procedures in Field Manual (FM) 5-430-00-1. b. Ensured that the cleared material did not interfere with drainage or equipment operating in the work area. *10. The element leader/sergeant submits status reports to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-254-1037	Construct a Ditch With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1038	Construct a Stockpile With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1042	Level Fill Material in a Fill Area With the Angle Blade of the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1043	Push Load the Scraper With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1044	Recover Equipment With a Crawler Tractor Winch
052-254-1045	Remove Trees With the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1046	Remove Brush With a Crawler Tractor
052-254-1047	Remove Stumps With the Crawler Tractor
052-254-1052	Construct a V Ditch With a Motorized Grader
052-254-1055	Spread Piles of Loose Material With a Motorized Grader
052-254-1058	Construct a Stockpile With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1060	Load a Haul Unit With a Scoop Loader
052-254-1061	Move a Load With a Scoop Loader Clamshell
052-254-1069	Excavate Material From an Area With a Motorized Scraper
052-256-3034	Organize Jobsite Security
052-256-3042	Direct Drainage Operations
052-256-3043	Direct Crawler Tractor Operations
052-256-3045	Direct Motor Grader Operations
052-256-3047	Direct Scoop Loader Operations
052-256-4141	Determine Events in a Construction Project
052-256-4143	Schedule Work in a Construction Project

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-3-0904.05-R01A	Establish Jobsite Security
05-3-1018	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Conduct Petroleum, Oils, and Lubricants (POL) Support Operations (05-3-1014)
(FM 10-67-1) (AR 190-51)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is deployed to a theater of operations. An area for storage/distribution is established. The element has a standing operating procedure (SOP) on management of POL and refueling of equipment and ground vehicles. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The refueling area provides around-the-clock support for equipment and ground vehicles that belong to the unit. The area is closely supervised to ensure a safe and efficient fuel operation. POL stocks are requisitioned, stored, rotated, distributed, and recorded.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The petroleum management officer forecasts requirements for POL, solvents, and preservatives. a. Received consolidated status reports from the petroleum inventory control specialist. b. Used daily and monthly status reports to forecast estimates for transportation requirements.		
2. The element takes precautionary measures against safety and health hazards. a. Controlled vapor formations and ignition sources. b. Followed safety precautions during transfer and storage operations. c. Protected themselves against health hazards, such as dust, gas, vapor, or liquid contaminants. d. Maintained a comprehensive fire plan that was current and available before performing supply point operations.		
* 3. The elements officer in charge/noncommissioned officer in charge (OIC/NCOIC) ensures that POL is properly maintained, stored, and distributed, to include both operational and prescribed stocks. a. Maintained an accurate account of the fuel on hand and the fuel dispensed to each vehicle or piece of equipment. b. Ensured that all storage containers were properly cleaned, filled, marked, and stored. c. Supervised the performance of preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on POL vehicles and equipment. d. Rotated stock by issuing damaged containers first followed by the oldest products.		
4. The petroleum supply specialist maintains an accurate account of the fuel on hand and the fuel dispensed to each vehicle or piece of equipment. a. Used accounting records and reports for an accurate account of all receipts, issues, and stocks on hand for both bulk and packaged petroleum products. b. Provided a breakout, by type and amount, of the fuel dispensed in any given period (usually 24 hours), as requested.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Immediately after notification, the element prepares to displace the fueling area to a new location according to the platoon SOP. 6. The fuel handler protects fuel from contamination. a. Detected contaminated fuel by taking samples from stored fuel at intervals prescribed by the SOP. b. Inspected and used filters/separators. 7. The fuel handler enforces the physical security plan for the POL operation site. a. Ensured that the fuel point was locked and that fuel could not be dispensed while it was unattended. b. Ensured that the fuel was dispensed to authorized personnel only.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies
05-3-1600	Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC)
55-2-0325.05-T01A	Receive External Sling Load Resupply

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Maintain the Authorized Stockage List (ASL) (05-3-1115)
(DA PAM 710-2-2) (AR 710-1) (AR 710-2)
(AR 725-50) (DA PAM 710-2-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The combat prescribed load list (PLL), that portion of the ASL that is a supply support activity (SSA), must be stocked to support the customer's essential combat maintenance. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The issuing element maintains 100 percent accountability of all repair parts.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The supply officer/noncommissioned officer (NCO) supervises section operations. a. Directed receiving operations to verify that all receipts were being processed according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and current Department of the Army (DA) publications. b. Directed storage operations to verify that all parts were stored in their assigned locations and protected from weather and pilferage. c. Directed issuing operations to verify that parts were being provided to the customer. d. Supervised the location survey and inventory.		
2. Receiving/issuing section personnel receive repair parts. a. Verified the actual quantities received against the receipt documents. b. Inspected items for damage. c. Reported discrepancies to the division materiel management center (DMMC) materials section. d. Assigned all items received for direct issue.		
3. Storage section personnel store repair parts. a. Checked the items received against the due-outs to supported units for issue. b. Placed items in their assigned storage locations or customer pickup bins. c. Maintained documentation or the automated equivalent of these forms. d. Protected items from deterioration or pilferage. e. Performed a location survey and inventory.		
4. Issuing section personnel issue and order repair parts ensuring that materiel release orders (MROs) are processed. a. Processed priority designators (PDs) 01 through 03 within 24 hours of receipt. b. Processed PDs 04 through 08 within 3 working days from receipt. c. Processed PDs 09 through 15 within 3 working days from receipt. d. Ordered parts to restock the ASL.		
5. Issuing section personnel inventory the ASL. a. Reviewed the ASL.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Added stocked demand items to the ASL when demand criteria was met. c. Deleted demands when retention criteria could not be met and no demands were anticipated for the next year.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Direct-Support Maintenance Section

TASK: Conduct Direct-Support Maintenance (05-3-1125)
(FM 4-30.3) (DA FORM 2404) (DA FORM 2405)
(DA FORM 2407) (DA PAM 738-750)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is providing direct-support maintenance for units conducting combat or construction operations. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element repairs equipment requiring direct-support-level maintenance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The maintenance shop officer/noncommissioned officer (NCO) receives vehicles and all appropriate paperwork (Department of the Army [DA] Forms 2404 and 2407).		
2. The inspector conducts an initial inspection. a. Rejected equipment if the operator or organizational-level maintenance was not performed. b. Accepted equipment if the operator and organizational-level maintenance was performed.		
3. Inspectors perform a diagnostic inspection to determine faults and the required parts for repairs. a. Used special diagnostic test equipment to determine faults. b. Used the appropriate technical manuals (TMs) during inspection. c. Recorded faults and the repair parts needed on DA Form 2404.		
4. The shop supply clerk verifies and orders the required repair parts. a. Used DA Form 2765-1 to order the repair parts. b. Verified the job order priority with the shop officer in charge (OIC)/NCO, logged in the job order packets on DA Form 2405, and placed the packets in the accepted job order section of the file.		
5. The shop supply clerk or other production control personnel updates the status of the job packets to prevent interruption in the normal work flow.		
6. The maintenance platoon mechanic repairs the equipment. a. Received the job packet. b. Used applicable TMs and maintenance allocation charts during the repairs. c. Ensured that special tools were available to make the repairs. d. Wore special clothing during the repairs. e. Used special safety equipment. f. Used the proper tools for the intended job. g. Completed the job and returned the job packet to the shop supply clerk or other production control personnel.		
7. Inspectors make a final inspection. a. Ensured that the repairs were made according to DA Form 2404 and applicable TMs. b. Made minor adjustments or corrections, if needed.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Closed out the job packet and returned it to the production control personnel. 8. The shop supply clerk or other production control personnel close out the job packet on DA Form 2405. a. Ensured that all forms were completed. b. Notified the using unit that the repairs were complete and equipment was ready for pick up. 9. Maintenance personnel provide on-site maintenance to all using units. a. Identified the unit. b. Identified the equipment. c. Located the unit (map coordinates). d. Identified the nature of the damage. e. Evaluated on-site repairability. f. Identified the required repair parts. g. Performed organic recoverability. h. Provided advice and assistance in correcting equipment failures noted during the inspection. i. Provided assistance to the using unit in evacuating equipment to a higher maintenance level for repair. 10. Maintenance personnel submit the reports to higher headquarters (HQ) as required in unit SOP		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Receive a Logistics Package (LOGPAC) (05-3-1600)
(FM 5-10) (FM 5-71-2) (FM 5-71-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, the element requires logistical support for follow-on missions. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Logistical support is required in order to maintain combat effectiveness. The platoon receives the LOGPAC according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). Digital units send requests and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader/sergeant determines the need for combat service support (CSS) for an operation and initiates the request. a. Forwarded the request to the company first sergeant (1SG), if not attached to a support unit. b. Forwarded the request to the supported maneuver unit 1SG, if attached, and provided a copy of the report to engineer higher headquarters (HQ). **NOTE: Digital units request CSS through the Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2) System or FM means according to the unit TACSOP.** * 2. The element leader/sergeant coordinates with the 1SG for the technique, time, and location of the LOGPAC. 3. The element assists the 1SG with pickup and delivery of supplies when required. * 4. The element leader/sergeant supervises resupply operations. a. Organized for resupply. (1) Moved the element tactically to the company resupply point, if delivered by the service station method. (2) Instructed the squad on the order of supply, if received by the tailgate method. b. Welcomed new personnel and assigned them to a squad, if received in the element. c. Transferred enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), if required. d. Ensured that all medical needs were met. e. Ensured that all vehicles; weapons; radios; and nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) equipment were maintained. f. Ensured that requirements for all petroleum, oils, and lubricants (POL) were met. g. Ensured that all administration needs were met. h. Ensured that all mail was received. i. Ensured that all classes of supply were received. j. Inspected each squad before they left the resupply point.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The element leader ensures that security is maintained throughout the resupply operation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-0042	Receive and Distribute Throughput Supplies

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Treat Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-0003.05-T01A)
(FM 4-25.11) (FM 8-285)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has sustained casualties. The unit has no organic medical treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Soldiers have been wounded and may have chemical contamination or nonbattle injuries. Some unit members have been assigned the additional duty of combat lifesaver. Unit personnel are performing first aid (self-aid/buddy aid), and combat lifesavers are providing enhanced first aid until medical treatment personnel arrive. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The higher headquarters (HQ) tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field expedient and natural shelters are available.

NOTE: This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 except when treating nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) casualties. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel provide first aid for casualties according to Field Manual (FM) 21-11, FM 8-285, and combat lifesaver certification standards. At MOPP4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to provide treatment and limit the type of treatment provided. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the first aid of casualties. a. Developed a treatment plan. b. Monitored the treatment for compliance with FM 21-11 and ensured that all casualties were treated. c. Directed the employment of combat lifesavers to treat casualties. d. Monitored battlefield stress reduction and prevention procedures. **NOTE: See Task 08-2-R303.05-T01A for detailed procedures.** e. Reported casualties, as required. f. Coordinated replenishment of Class VIII supplies with the higher HQ logistic element according to the TACSOP. g. Directed distribution of Class VIII supplies and equipment according to the TACSOP. h. Enforced quality control (QC) procedures for Class VIII items issued to unit elements.		
2. Unit personnel survey casualties. a. Checked for responsiveness. b. Checked for breathing. c. Checked for bleeding. d. Checked for shock. e. Checked for fractures, to include cervical-spine and back fractures. f. Checked for burns. g. Checked for head injuries.		
3. Unit personnel administer lifesaving first aid. a. Cleared all objects from the throat of the casualty.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Used the jaw thrust method to open the airway, if a cervical-spine injury was suspected. c. Performed mouth-to-mouth resuscitation according to cardiovascular pulmonary resuscitation (CPR) procedures to restore the casualty's breathing.		
4. Unit personnel control a hemorrhage. a. Applied dressings and bandages. b. Applied manual-direct pressure to the wound. c. Elevated extremities. d. Applied a pressure dressing to the wound. e. Applied a tourniquet as a last resort.		
5. Unit personnel dress wounds. a. Applied occlusive dressings to open chest wounds, if possible. b. Applied dressings to open abdominal wounds. c. Applied dressings to open head wounds.		
6. Unit personnel splint suspected fractures. a. Used available materials to splint injuries. b. Splinted fractures in the position found. c. Restricted the movement of extremities. d. Checked circulation for impairment.		
7. Unit personnel provide first aid to casualties with burns. a. Extinguished thermal-burn agents. b. Removed chemical-burn agents. c. Eliminated electrical-burn sources. d. Uncovered the burn unless it was stuck to clothing or a chemical environment existed. e. Applied a field dressing, if appropriate.		
8. Unit personnel provide first aid for environmental injuries. a. Administered first aid for heat injuries. b. Administered first aid for cold-weather injuries.		
9. Unit personnel provide first aid for chemical casualties. a. Took immediate protective steps according to FM 8-285 to protect self and warn others. b. Protected casualties from further contamination. c. Administered nerve-agent antidotes according to FM 8-285. d. Administered convulsant antidote for nerve agents (CANA), if required. e. Decontaminated casualties according to FM 8-285, if necessary.		
10. Unit personnel prevent shock. a. Positioned casualties in the correct antishock position according to FM 21-11. b. Loosened clothing and equipment. c. Prevented casualties from chilling or overheating. d. Calmed casualties by reassuring them.		
11. Unit combat lifesavers perform enhanced first aid. a. Evaluated casualties for their condition and the type of treatment needed. b. Measured casualties' vital signs. c. Inserted an oropharyngeal airway in unconscious casualties. d. Applied splints to fractured limbs. e. Administered first aid to chemical-agent casualties.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Initiated intravenous infusions for hypovolemic shock. g. Identified environmental injuries. h. Treated environmental injuries. i. Managed battle fatigue (BF) casualties.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
08-2-R303.05-T01A	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Transport Casualties (for Units Without Medical Treatment Personnel) (08-2-C316.05-T01A)
(FM 8-10-6) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)
(FM 12-6) (FM 3-21.38)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. The unit has no organic medical-treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded enemy prisoner of war (EPW) casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Casualties are transported as soon as the tactical situation permits according to the TACSOP, the OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Convention, and Field Manual (FM) 8-10-6. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and leaders supervise the transport of casualties. a. Monitored casualty transport operations for compliance with FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP. b. Identified casualty collection points. c. Identified transport requirements. d. Supervised the preparation of casualties for transport. e. Coordinated the transport of casualties from the unit area with the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 8-10-6 and the TACSOP. f. Coordinated security requirements for the pickup site with subelements and the higher HQ operations element. g. Disseminated transport information to unit personnel. h. Forwarded the casualty feeder report and witness statements to the higher HQ personnel element according to FM 12-6 and the TACSOP.		
2. Element personnel prepare casualties for transport. a. Provided first aid treatment to casualties. **NOTE: See Task 08-2-0003.05-T01A for detailed treatment procedures.** b. Reported casualties. c. Collected classified documents, such as signal operation instructions (SOI), standing signal instructions (SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Secured the custody of organizational equipment according to the TACSOP. e. Forwarded casualty feeder reports to the unit HQ according to the TACSOP.		
3. Element personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries. a. Selected the type of manual carry appropriate to the situation and the injury. b. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.		
4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries. a. Identified the litter teams. b. Constructed an improvised litter from available material, as required. c. Secured the casualty on the litter. d. Transported the casualty without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.		
5. Element personnel transport casualties to a medical-treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles. a. Loaded the maximum number of casualties according to FM 8-10-6. b. Secured casualties in the vehicle. c. Transported casualties without causing further injury according to FM 8-10-6.		
* 6. The commander and leaders request an aeromedical evacuation. a. Transmitted the request according to FM 8-10-6, the OPORD, and the TACSOP. b. Selected the landing site (which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off) according to FMs 8-10-6 and 3-21.38. c. Supervised the removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about before aircraft arrival. d. Supervised the security of the landing site according to the TACSOP. e. Ensured that the landing zone (LZ) was appropriately marked (light sets, smoke, and so forth) according to the TACSOP, if required.		
7. Element personnel assist in loading the ambulance. a. Employed the proper carrying and loading techniques according to FM 8-10-6. b. Loaded casualties in the sequence directed by the crew. c. Loaded casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort. d. Employed safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and the TACSOP. e. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.		
8. Element personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties. a. Assumed MOPP4. b. Marked contaminated casualties according to the TACSOP. c. Notified the supporting MTF that contaminated casualties were en route to their location. d. Transported casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station. e. Protected casualties from further contamination during transport.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties. a. Maintained security of EPW casualties according to the TACSOP. b. Searched EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before transport. c. Transported EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Convention and the TACSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Command Section

TASK: Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Stress Prevention Procedures (08-2-R303.05-T01A)
(FM 8-51) (FM 22-51)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Combat health support (CHS) operations have commenced. Element personnel are deployed in support of higher headquarters (HQ) operations. The sleep plan and the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) to manage battle fatigue (BF) soldiers have been developed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period, causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that procedures for managing battlefield stress be implemented. Simplified collective-protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

NOTE: Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some military occupational specialty (MOS) specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress prevention implementation. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and leaders perform stress prevention actions. a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level. b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation. c. Briefed the leaders' intention to all unit personnel. d. Spoke positively concerning the unit missions, purpose, and abilities. e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit. f. Instituted an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors. g. Informed personnel of the availability of religious support.		
* 2. The commander and leaders implement the sleep plan. a. Provided a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities. b. Adjusted the sleep plan as dictated by the tactical situation. c. Enforced the sleep plan according to the TACSOP.		
* 3. Leaders implement task rotation or restructuring procedures. a. Alternated cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required. b. Rotated unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy. d. Adjusted task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.		
* 4. Leaders implement stress coping and management techniques. a. Integrated new unit members into the unit immediately. b. Assisted soldiers in resolving home front problems.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders. d. Provided instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel before deployment. e. Conducted after-action debriefings. f. Scheduled a critical-event debriefing after any traumatic event according to Field Manual (FM) 22-51. g. Conducted unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies.		
* 5. The commander and leaders implement stress control techniques. a. Implemented a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases. b. Assigned soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks. c. Directed personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers. d. Referred soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF to the supporting medical-treatment facility (MTF) for evaluation. e. Reintegrated return-to-duty (RTD) soldiers into their specific element.		
6. Element personnel employ stress prevention measures. a. Maintained a positive attitude concerning the unit mission, purpose, and abilities. b. Complied with the commander's sleep plan. c. Identified other soldiers with signs of stress or BF. d. Provided immediate buddy aid support. e. Reported signs of stress or BF in other soldiers to their immediate supervisor. f. Accepted new unit members immediately. g. Practiced relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places. h. Participated in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Perform Field Sanitation Functions (08-2-R315.05-T01A)
(FM 21-10) (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10)
(AR 40-5) (FM 4-25.12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Health hazards exist that require field sanitation measures. The element is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit field sanitation team (FST). The combat health support (CHS) plan, the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP), and the higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The FST performs field sanitation measures according to the TACSOP, Field Manuals (FMs) 21-10 and 21-10-1, and the commander's guidance. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, only minimum-essential field sanitation activities are performed. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander directs field sanitation measures. a. Directed field sanitation activities to counter a medical threat. b. Monitored field sanitation activities for compliance with FMs 21-10 and 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. c. Enforced individual field sanitation measures. d. Requested assistance from the supporting preventive medicine (PVNTMED) element for sanitation problems that were beyond the expertise of the unit FST according to the TACSOP and the OPORD. e. Corrected field sanitation deficiencies. f. Reported field sanitation deficiencies that could not be corrected by unit personnel to the FST. g. Enforced safety procedures according to Army Regulation (AR) 385-10 and the TACSOP. h. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.		
2. The FST supervises the unit field sanitation measures. a. Maintained the field sanitation basic load according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12. b. Supervised the distribution of field sanitation basic-load items according to AR 40-5 and FM 4-25.12. c. Tested the unit water supply for the required chlorine residual level according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. d. Inspected water containers and trailers according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. e. Monitored personnel to ensure that they used personal protective measures (skin, clothing, and bed net repellent) against arthropods and rodents according to applicable directives and the commander's guidance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Conducted rodent surveys, as required. g. Monitored personnel for the employment of correct hygiene measures. h. Monitored waste facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP, as required. i. Inspected latrines and urinals according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. j. Inspected liquid and solid waste-disposal facilities to ensure their compliance with AR 40-5, FM 4-25.12, and the TACSOP. k. Inspected hand-washing devices according to FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. l. Inspected the transport, storage, preparation, and service of food for compliance with FM 4-25.12 and the TACSOP. m. Provided advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander. n. Enforced safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP. o. Enforced environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP. 3. Unit personnel employ field sanitation measures. a. Maintained the prescribed load of water purification materials according to AR 40-5, FM 21-10, and the TACSOP. b. Prepared nonpotable water for personal use according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP. c. Consumed only water designated as potable. d. Maintained latrines and hand-washing facilities according to FM 21-10 and the TACSOP. e. Employed preventive measures against cold and heat injuries. f. Employed personal-hygiene measures. g. Employed preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing, and bed net repellent. h. Reported field sanitation deficiencies to the FST. i. Employed safety procedures according to AR 385-10 and the TACSOP. j. Employed environmental-protection procedures according to AR 200-1 and the TACSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Provide Food Service Support (10-2-0317.05-T01A)
(FM 10-23) (FM 10-23-1) (FM 4-25.12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The elements are requesting field feeding. The field kitchen area is set up, and rations and water are picked up. Additional rations are requested. Unit strength reports are available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Food and water may be transported to satellite areas. Disposal facilities have been prepared. Nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) attacks and intrusions by threat forces can occur during field kitchen operations. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Provide food service support according to the commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The food service sergeant plans food service support. a. Verified the strengths of all supported units. b. Requested the required amount of subsistence. c. Prepared personnel work schedules. d. Assigned duties to all food service personnel. e. Prepared the production schedule, as required. f. Coordinated with the supported units on the distribution of food to remote areas. g. Developed the NBC decontamination procedures for equipment, supplies, and personnel. h. Coordinated food service personnel's defensive duties with the company command post (CP). i. Requested kitchen mess attendant support from the supported units.		
* 2. The food service sergeant supervises field kitchen operations. a. Established operational hours as prescribed by the field-feeding plan and the commander guidance or both. b. Assigned work schedules consistent with personnel availability and meal schedules. c. Monitored equipment operations, maintenance, and safety for compliance with the appropriate technical manuals (TMs) and the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP). d. Coordinated additional supply requests with the company's supply facility. e. Forwarded food service personnel and equipment status reports to the company CP. f. Performed periodic inspections of personnel for personal hygiene and equipment for proper operation. g. Monitored the employment of preventive-medicine measures for compliance with field sanitation policies and procedures in the TACSOP. h. Supervised the decontamination of contaminated equipment, supplies, and personnel. i. Checked operations to ensure that safety measures were employed.		
3. The food service personnel pick up and store subsistence items. a. Inspected vehicles for cleanliness and proper dunnage.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Inspected subsistence items for condition and quantity. c. Prepared shortages, overages, and unsatisfactory subsistence listings. d. Signed the required documentation. e. Transported subsistence items from the Class I point to the unit field location. f. Stored subsistence items according to security measures and appropriate directives. g. Washed, packaged, or canned foods after an NBC attack.		
4. The food service personnel prepare meals. a. Inspected the field kitchen equipment using the appropriate equipment manuals for proper operation. b. Employed personal-hygiene measures. c. Performed preliminary food preparation procedures. d. Prepared menu items according to the production schedule, when applicable. e. Employed preventive-medicine measures. f. Prepared food for transport. g. Employed safety measures. h. Checked insulated food containers and beverage dispensers to ensure that they were preheated or prechilled. i. Checked insulated food containers and beverage dispensers to ensure that the food was properly packed for remote feeding. j. Ensured that all items to support remote feeding were assembled and packed.		
5. The food service personnel issue Class I supplies to the company representative (first sergeant [1SG] or supply sergeant) in the maneuver battalions. a. Verified the head count with the 1SG or the supply sergeant. b. Issued the prepared food in insulated food containers. c. Issued beverages in beverage dispensers. d. Issued sanitized serving utensils, plates, cups, flatware, and condiments to support the meal.		
6. The food service personnel or unit personnel (depending on the method of feeding) serve the meals. a. Employed personal-hygiene measures. b. Set up the serving line as dictated by the tactical situation. c. Inspected the mess kits, if used, to ensure that they were sanitized before serving. d. Employed portion control. e. Maintained food at the proper temperatures. f. Replenished food items. g. Opened no more T-ration pans than required during the serving. h. Destroyed the opened food after an NBC attack. i. Employed safety measures.		
7. The food service personnel maintain the equipment. a. Performed before-, during-, and after-operation preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the assigned equipment. b. Maintained temperatures of the wash and rinse water on the wash line. c. Cleaned the cooking equipment. d. Sanitized the cooking equipment. e. Stored the clean equipment to allow for air drying.		
8. The food service personnel perform waste disposal.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Initiated effective trash management procedures. b. Performed liquid-waste disposal. c. Performed solid-waste disposal. d. Cleaned vehicles thoroughly with the prescribed cleaning agents. e. Sanitized vehicles thoroughly with the prescribed cleaning agents. f. Employed preventive-medicine measures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Perform Unit Graves Registration (GRREG) Operations (10-2-0318.05-T01A)
(FM 10-64) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has sustained fatalities. The tactical situation permits GRREG operations to be performed. Some remains may be contaminated. The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. There are no GRREG personnel available; nonmortuary affairs personnel perform the task. The theater commander has authorized emergency burials.

NOTE: Only those tasks deemed mission-essential by the commander are performed in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element either recovers the killed in action (KIA) and evacuates them to a designated mortuary-affair collection point or performs an emergency burial. Personal possessions are not lost. Locations of the emergency graves are recorded and reported to higher headquarters (HQ). These activities are curtailed in MOPP4. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element commander designates a search-and-recovery team. a. Selected a team leader. b. Issued guidance.		
* 2. The search-and-recovery team leader prepares for the search. a. Performed a map or aerial reconnaissance of the search area. b. Identified additional support requirements. c. Requested additional support requirements from higher HQ. d. Identified the search pattern to be used. e. Coordinated nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) and explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) assistance with higher HQ. f. Coordinated area security with higher HQ.		
* 3. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises the search-and-recovery and the evacuation operations. a. Briefed the search-and-recovery team on operational procedures. b. Issued personal effects bags, human remains pouches (if available), and NBC agent tags. c. Assigned the search area. d. Monitored the search-and-recovery team operations for compliance with the TACSOP and the commander's guidance. e. Coordinated evacuation operations with higher HQ. f. Forwarded the situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ according to the TACSOP.		
4. The search-and-recovery team conducts the search. a. Checked the area immediately for mines or booby traps. b. Searched the assigned areas for remains and personal effects. c. Marked the terrain location of the remains with pegs. d. Collected all disassociated personal effects. e. Recorded the 8-digit grid coordinates of the recovery site.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The search-and-recovery team recovers remains. a. Established tentative identification. b. Attached the NBC tag or a tag marked with a large C to the contaminated and contagious remains. c. Attached personal effects to the remains. d. Shrouded the remains with available materials. e. Prepared a sketch of the recovery site. f. Prepared a map overlay of the recovery site.		
6. The search-and-recovery team evacuates remains. a. Verified that personal effects were attached to the remains. b. Loaded the remains in ground transportation, feet first and in aircraft, headfirst. c. Transported the remains in a covered vehicle or aircraft to a designated mortuary-affair collection point.		
* 7. The search-and-recovery team leader supervises emergency burials. a. Identified the specific burial site. b. Supervised the marking of the grave site. c. Supervised the burying of all recovered remains and their personal effects.		
8. The search-and-recovery team performs emergency burials. a. Prepared the grave site. b. Placed the remains in the grave. c. Marked all grave sites. d. Buried the United States, allied, and enemy forces remains with their personal effects in separate grave sites.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Provide Company Supply Support (10-2-0320.05-T01A)
(DA PAM 710-2-1) (AR 710-2) (FM 3-4)
(FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element headquarters (HQ) is receiving requests for supplies from subordinate elements. The equipment and supplies are arriving through supply channels, but additional supplies may be required. Extra small arms and ammunition are stored in the supply area. The unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the battalion operation order (OPORD) are available. The supply area has been established and supply support is a continuous task that is performed simultaneously with other support and operational tasks. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The equipment and supplies are distributed without interfering with mission requirements as established by the TACSOP and the OPORD. At mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4, unit supply support is reduced to the minimum-essential actions. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means according to unit TACSOP. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element commander directs unit supply operations. a. Inspected the supply records and status to ensure compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TACSOP. b. Directed inventories of supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand. c. Inspected unit equipment, weapons, and ammunition storage areas for compliance with supply regulations, directives, and the TACSOP. d. Directed the issue of supplies and equipment according to battalion guidance and the TACSOP or both sustainment controls.		
* 2. The supply sergeant supervises unit supply operations. a. Inspected the supply status to determine total assets. b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand. c. Developed the supply storage plans. d. Monitored supply transactions to ensure compliance with established supply procedures. e. Supervised the control of weapons and ammunition. f. Prepared input to the materiel condition status reports (MCSR).		
3. Supply personnel request additional supplies. a. Coordinated requirements with the elements. b. Calculated resupply requirements. c. Recorded requests on the appropriate document register. d. Forwarded resupply requests to the Supply Officer (US Army) (S4).		
4. Supply personnel receive supplies. a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition. b. Recorded receipt of supplies on the appropriate document register. c. Stored supplies according to storage plans. d. Notified the requesting element of the availability of supplies for issue.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Supply personnel issue supplies. a. Processed supply requests according to the appropriate regulations, directives, and the TACSOP. b. Prepared transaction documents according to the appropriate regulations, directives, and the TACSOP. c. Issued supplies as prescribed in the commander's guidance. d. Maintained the prescribed copies of the transactions according to the appropriate regulations and directives. 6. Supply personnel maintain small arms and ammunition. a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition according to the appropriate regulations and command policies. b. Requested ammunition resupply from the S4. c. Performed unit-level maintenance on small arms. d. Forwarded weapons beyond organizational-repair capabilities to the support maintenance elements.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Detachment Headquarters
Communication Section

TASK: Operate a Telephone Switch (Manual/SB22/PT) (11-5-0050.05-T01A)
(TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element occupies a defensive position and is directed to establish wire communications. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element installs wire, a switchboard (SB), and telephones to establish and maintain communications with subordinate elements no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Designated personnel operate a telephone SB. a. Inspected the SB22/PT for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and Technical Manual (TM) 11-5805-262-12. If the packing list was not available, used the end-item list to check the components. b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, a packing box, or a ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, a shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from the elements. c. Laid the SB on its side with nameplate up. d. Grounded the equipment according to the grounding techniques specified in TM 11-5805-262-12. e. Performed the SB preoperation procedures according to TM 11-5805-262-12. f. Labeled the SB according to unit standing operating procedure (SOP). g. Connected local and trunk wire lines. 2. Designated personnel install the internal wiring and telephones. a. Tested the field wire or cable before installation. b. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the platoon leader. c. Secured the field wire at starting points and at changes of direction to reduce strain. d. Used the proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points. e. Tagged the wire ties. f. Enhanced concealment using the terrain and vegetation. g. Ensured that the overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads. 3. Designated personnel operate the telephone SB. a. Tested the SB22/PT by performing communication checks with all users to ensure that the SB was operational. b. Processed calls. c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the telephone SB according to TM 11-5805-262-12.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. Designated personnel inform the platoon leader when wire communications are established. 5. Designated personnel perform PMCS on the field wire or cable lines. a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field wire or cable lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Communication Section

TASK: Provide a Field Cable or Wire System (11-5-0121.05-T01A)
(FM 24-19) (TC 24-20) (TM 11-5805-262-12)
(TM 11-5805-294-12)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a fragmentary order (FRAGO) and a briefing on the size and shape of the facility or supported command post (CP), the location of each element, the required instruments, and the installation priority. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The internal communications network is set up according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) or the commander's guidance, and is operational by the time specified in the order. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The section leader prepares a telephone cable or wire installation plan. a. Selected a wire route (based on a map study) that met the requirements of the tactical situation and was easy to construct and maintain. b. Selected the most direct primary and alternate wire routes after conducting a ground reconnaissance. c. Prepared an interim plan indicating the routes of the wire lines. d. Allocated the manpower and materials to accomplish the task. e. Prepared a telephone traffic diagram showing the number of telephone circuits in the communications system. f. Prepared a telephone directory according to the signal operation instructions (SOI) or the standing signal instructions (SSI). Included the names and numbers of the telephone system users. 2. The section installs a telephone switchboard (SB). a. Inspected the equipment for accountability and serviceability according to the packing list and the appropriate technical manual (TM). Used the end-item list if no packing list was available. b. Positioned the telephone SB on a flat surface, such as a table, packing box, or ledge in a foxhole, but not directly on the ground. Used a poncho, shelter half, or canvas to protect the SB from adverse elements. c. Laid the SB on its side with the nameplate up. d. Grounded the equipment using proper grounding techniques according to the appropriate TM. e. Performed SB preoperation procedures according to the appropriate TM. f. Labeled the SB according to the traffic diagram. g. Connected the local and trunk wire lines. 3. The section installs internal wiring and telephones. a. Installed the distribution box. b. Tested the field cable or wire before installing. c. Laid the field wire and installed telephones according to the priority established by the communications section leader. d. Secured the field wire at all the starting points and at any changes of direction to reduce the strain.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Used proper hardware (anything that did not cut or damage the wire) and ties (basket hitch, loop knot, clove hitch, or drop loop) for hanging tension bridges and securing points. f. Tagged the wire ties. g. Used the terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment. h. Ensured that all overhead wire construction met clearance requirements of at least 5.5 meters above secondary roads and 7.2 meters above primary roads. i. Finished the line route map indicating the routes of wire lines, SBs, switching centrals, and test stations; the number of circuits along a route; and the type of wire construction. 4. The section operates the telephone SB. a. Tested the SB to ensure that it was operational. b. Used the turning hand-ringing generator on the telephone (TA 312/PT) to terminate and ring off circuits as they became available to called parties. c. Processed calls. d. Updated the traffic diagram, as required. e. Performed operator preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the SB according to the appropriate TM. 5. The section performs PMCS on the field cable or wire lines. a. Maintained a 20 percent slack in the field cable or wire lines. b. Kept all wire splices and cable locks clear of standing water.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Detachment Headquarters
Operations and Plans Section

TASK: Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.05-T01A)
(FM 3-19.40) (AR 190-8) (DD FORM 2745)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates the EPWs according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T) method. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element searches the EPWs. a. Removed weapons and documents that had intelligence value. b. Returned the personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment. c. Furnished receipts to the prisoners for their personal property that was taken.		
2. The element segregates the EPWs. a. Segregated the EPWs by rank, sex, desertion status, civilian status, nationality, and ideology. b. Turned the wounded EPWs over to the medical personnel for evacuation through the medical channels.		
3. The element silences the EPWs. a. Prevented the EPW leaders from giving orders. b. Prevented the EPWs from planning an escape. c. Did not talk in front of the EPWs except to issue orders and maintain discipline.		
4. The element safeguards the EPWs. a. Removed the EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield. b. Did not allow anyone to abuse the EPWs. c. Treated the EPWs humanely.		
5. The element tags the EPWs with a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745. a. Annotated the date and time of the capture, the capturing unit, the grid coordinates of the capture, and the circumstances of the capture. b. Attached Part A to the EPWs. c. Retained Part B for the unit records. d. Attached Part C to the property.		
6. The element speeds the EPWs to the rear. a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the company had EPWs. b. Removed the EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point. c. Exploited the intelligence information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	**Task Title**
05-2-1218	Conduct Report Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Conduct Unit Level Maintenance Operations (43-2-0001.05-T01A)
(FM 4-30.3) (AR 220-1) (AR 385-40)
(AR 700-138) (AR 750-1) (DA PAM 738-750)
(FM 9-43-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element maintenance personnel receive requests to repair inoperative organic equipment. The element maintenance area is established. The required tools, equipment, and personnel are available. Operators are performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The element tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Element maintenance is a continuous task and is performed simultaneously with other internal support and operational tasks. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element vehicles and equipment are maintained according to the appropriate technical manuals (TMs) and the commander's guidance. Digital elements send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element commander directs the element maintenance program. a. Supervised the implementation of the unit maintenance program to ensure compliance with the commander's guidance and the TACSOP. b. Identified the company operational levels by reviewing the vehicle and equipment status reports. c. Approved the use of controlled exchanges when the required repair parts were not available. d. Approved repairs using the battle damage assessment and repair (BDAR) procedures when the established repair procedures could not be used. e. Checked the materiel condition status report (MCSR) for accuracy and completeness. f. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems to minimize their impact on element readiness. g. Coordinated the resolution of maintenance problems with the battalion maintenance officer (BMO). h. Forwarded the MCSR to the BMO. i. Conducted periodic inspections of personnel and equipment to ensure that the safety program was enforced.		
* 2. Section leaders supervise operator maintenance. a. Monitored PMCS performance for compliance with the appropriate TMs and the commander's guidance. b. Inspected personnel and equipment to ensure compliance with the safety program. c. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the motor sergeant.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Monitored the supply of the repair parts for platoon equipment to ensure that the repair parts were on order. e. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant. f. Maintained the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment. g. Provided input for the MCSR to the commander.		
3. Company personnel perform operator maintenance. a. Performed PMCS according to the appropriate TMs. b. Notified the supervisor of any maintenance problems beyond the operator's capability. c. Requested approval for the BDAR through the platoon leader when the established repair procedures could not be used. d. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual. e. Assisted the unit maintenance personnel with the repairs and services.		
* 4. The motor sergeant supervises the unit maintenance personnel. a. Organized the element maintenance personnel to perform element maintenance activities. b. Supervised The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS) and the prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy. c. Supervised the repair and the inspection procedures to ensure that they were done safely and according to the appropriate references. d. Requested approval for the BDAR from the commander when the established repair procedures could not be used. e. Supervised the BDAR procedures to ensure that they were done according to the appropriate BDAR manuals. f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges from the commander when the required repair parts were not available. g. Supervised the use of controlled exchanges for compliance with the commander's guidance. h. Notified the platoon or section leaders upon completion of the repairs. i. Supervised the recovery operations to ensure that the correct recovery and safety procedures were used. j. Supervised the Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) procedures to ensure that the testing of oil samples was done at the required intervals. k. Coordinated the maintenance status with the platoon leader. l. Provided the unit maintenance status to the commander.		
5. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment. a. Diagnosed faults on the inoperative equipment. b. Requested the required repair parts from the PLL clerk. c. Repaired the equipment according to applicable TMs. d. Requested approval for the BDAR through the motor sergeant when the established repair parts were not available. e. Performed the BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual. f. Requested approval for controlled exchanges through the motor sergeant when the required repair parts were not available. g. Performed controlled exchanges. h. Performed a final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs. i. Employed safety procedures to minimize accidents.		
6. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance. a. Identified the category of the repair as direct support or higher. b. Corrected unit level deficiencies. c. Prepared the required documentation for submission to support maintenance.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Evacuated the equipment to support maintenance. e. Verified the completion of repairs. f. Picked up the equipment upon the completion of repairs. 7. Unit maintenance personnel perform administrative-support functions. a. Maintained the PLL. b. Requested repair parts for element equipment. c. Turned in unserviceable, repairable items. d. Maintained technical publications on all organic equipment. 8. Unit maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles. a. Verified the location of the disabled vehicle. b. Identified the best route to the vehicle, given the tactical situation. c. Coordinated indirect-fire support along the route with the Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2) and the Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3). d. Maintained security while en route to the recovery site. e. Established local security at the recovery site. f. Removed casualties from vehicles. g. Treated casualties. h. Requested medical assistance, if required. i. Evacuated casualties, if required. j. Performed a battle damage assessment to determine if repairs were required. k. Performed repairs and the BDAR on site, if possible. l. Recovered nonrepairable equipment back to the unit maintenance area according to the established recovery procedures. m. Requested the disposition of unrecoverable equipment from the commander. n. Conducted salvage operations to remove all usable equipment. o. Prepared vehicles for destruction according to the TACSOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Plan/Control Augmentation Support (05-1-0721)
(FM 5-100)

ITERATION:	1	2	3	4	5	M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U		(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has been tasked with a mission that requires additional resources and augmentation support. Augmentation support is available. Digital elements have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion staff determines the augmentation support necessary to accomplish the mission and submits a request and then begins the coordination for logistical support that provides for unhindered mission execution by the attached element. Digital elements perform collaborative planning; send requests, reports, and orders; and perform Digital Topographic Support System (DTSS) functions, using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Digital elements perform collaborative planning, make requests, and send or receive reports using digital systems.		
1. The battalion staff performs mission analysis and determines resource requirements and availability during the estimate process. a. Determined resources required in time to accomplish the mission. b. Determined the availability of organic resources. c. Included requirements for rations, maintenance, fuel, and lubricants to support augmentation element(s), to include shortfalls, such as equipment maintenance.		
2. The Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) submits a request for augmentation support. a. Requested augmentation support from higher headquarters (HQ) if not supporting a maneuver element. b. Requested augmentation support from higher HQ and the maneuver commander when supporting a maneuver unit. c. Submitted the request immediately after the estimate process was complete. d. Included the following information in the request: (1) Type of relationship (command or support). (2) Amount and type of personnel and equipment needed. (3) Length of time needed to accomplish the mission. (4) Mission of the battalion. (5) Mission of the augmentation support element.		
3. The battalion staff modifies the estimate process based on the actual augmentation support received. a. Prioritized the effort for the supporting element. b. Effected the coordination for logistical support based on the command or support relationship, such as food, fuel, and maintenance.		
4. The S3 coordinates the liaison of the augmentation element with the engineer company(s).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Determined the time, place, and attendance requirements for issuing the battalion operation order (OPORD) if not already issued. b. Determined the time and place for the liaison between the augmentation element and the engineer company. 5. The battalion staff monitors the attached elements. a. Received personnel strength, maintenance status, mission status, and updates as required. b. Shifted assets as necessary. c. Inspected the quality of workmanship. d. Visited the element to maintain high morale. 6. The augmented unit staff terminates augmentation support. a. Accounted for equipment and personnel. b. Reported mission accomplishment to higher and receiving HQ. **Note: Reports are sent via FM or digital means according to the standing operating procedure (SOP) of the element.**		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-0008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Control a Base in a Base Cluster (05-2-0035)
(FM 3-90)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is in the division rear, corps rear, or communications zone (COMMZ) under a Level I or II enemy threat. The company commander is the base commander and has received guidance from the base cluster commander on base location, composition, reaction team requirements, and the area of coverage. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company implements control measures ensuring continuous coordination and communication, and defends the base without incurring casualties or damage due to an inadequate defensive plan or defensive measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The elements command post establishes a base defense operations center (BDOC). a. Assumed the BDOC functions. b. Incorporated a liaison from other units located in the base. c. Planned, prepared, and supervised internal operations to protect personnel, equipment, and resources from enemy attacks. d. Performed an internal vulnerability analysis of the units and the base.		
2. The BDOC develops a base defense plan and forwards it to the base cluster operations center (BCOC). a. Obtained the perimeter sector sketches and developed a base fire plan. b. Incorporated information gathered from all units within the base. c. Ensured that the fires of all units in the base were integrated. d. Planned for and supervised internal base defense measures and identified requirements beyond organic capabilities. e. Established a reaction team to augment the defensive posture of the base (one squad). f. Made changes to the plan as needed and forwarded those changes to the BCOC.		
3. The BDOC coordinates and establishes communications with the BCOC. a. Established and maintained continuous communications with the BCOC using organic equipment or equipment provided by the BCOC. Used the following: (1) Field telephone (primary). Established internal communications (wire). (2) Radio (alternate). Adhered to radio restrictions according to the guidance from the BCOC. Established and operated a single-channel voice radio station. (3) Messenger or courier (alternate). b. Ensured that the base cluster commander's guidance was received and implemented. c. Recommended adjustments in the location and routines to enhance self-defense without detracting from the mission. d. Exchanged call signs and frequencies with the BCOC.		
4. The BDOC establishes internal control measures within the base.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Established a dismount point. b. Established an access control point for the base and BDOC if needed. c. Used perimeter security patrols and/or observation points (OPs). 5. The company establishes an internal communications net through the use of organic equipment and element assets if appropriate. a. Maintained continuous landline communications with the dismount point, OPs, and platoons. Established internal communications (wire). b. Employed the current signal operation instructions (SOI). c. Used radio communications with the security patrols as an alternate to the field telephone for internal communications. Operated an net control station (NCS). 6. The BDOC controls the defense against a Threat Level I and II attack. a. Coordinated a mutual defense with local military police and other units. b. Requested response forces from the BCOC to defend against attack beyond the base capability. c. Assisted response forces in defeating enemy attacks beyond the capability of the base.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Manage Engineer Reconnaissance Operations (05-2-0410)
(FM 5-170) (DA FORM 1248) (DA FORM 1249)
(DA FORM 1250) (DA FORM 1251) (DA FORM 1252)
(DA FORM 1711-R) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The engineer company is tasked to plan and direct an engineer reconnaissance of a designated area. The area is secure, but enemy contact is possible. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company plans and directs platoon reconnaissance missions to gather sufficient information to fulfill the reconnaissance objectives.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The company plans the reconnaissance mission as defined in the battalion operation order (OPORD). a. Gathered supporting intelligence data (map products and aerial photos). b. Established reconnaissance objectives, main supply routes (MSRs), obstacle locations, general trafficability, decontamination points, and bivouac sites. c. Identified the platoon(s) to perform the mission(s). d. Established the time, distance, and size of the zone(s) or route(s) to reconnoiter.		
* 2. The company commander determines the reconnaissance method. a. Selected route reconnaissance when time was a critical factor. b. Selected zone reconnaissance when cross-country trafficability was important. c. Selected area reconnaissance when the mission required specific information about a defined area. An area reconnaissance is more thorough and time-consuming than a zone reconnaissance.		
* 3. The company commander briefs the platoon(s) on the reconnaissance mission(s), to include— a. The objective of the reconnaissance. b. The area or route to cover. c. The methods of reconnaissance. d. Hasty or deliberate reconnaissance. e. Additional guidance (attention to fords, bridges, bivouac sites, and contaminated areas). f. Checkpoints (for progress reports, assistance, and communications checks).		
* 4. The element leader ensures that unit members have the following minimum essential material to conduct the mission: a. A map of the area, overlay paper, a compass, and a tape measure. b. The appropriate reconnaissance reports. c. A radio (secure mode, communications check).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The company operations noncommissioned officer (NCO) reviews the reconnaissance report(s). a. Ensured that the platoon(s) accomplished the objective(s). b. Ensured that members recorded dimensions (in meters) on the overlay; for example, road width; bridges; overhead clearance; and constrictions to travel way, fords, tunnels, or underpasses. c. Ensured that members recorded and annotated critical terrain features and obstacles. Ensured the use of the appropriate symbols on the overlay at their geographical location (slopes, curves, fords, ferries, bridges, reduction in travel way, and constrictions). d. Ensured that members used the appropriate symbols on the overlay at their geographical location (for example slopes, curves, fords, ferries, bridges, reduction in travel way, and constrictions).		
6. The company operation NCO updates the company terrain analysis and overlay. Prepares to brief the commander on the results of the reconnaissance mission(s).		
* 7. The company commander briefs the battalion commander and staff on the mission(s). Submits all reports to the battalion Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) within the time constraints.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
052-196-2002	Determine the Radius of Curves
052-196-3035	Prepare an Engineer Reconnaissance Report
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
052-196-3150	Conduct Route Reconnaissance

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-7008	Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections
Maintenance Platoon Headquarters
Unit Maintenance Section
Direct-Support Maintenance Section
Maintenance Supply Section

TASK: Conduct Report Procedures (05-2-1218)
(FM 24-1) (FM 24-18) (FM 24-19)
(FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)
(FM 3-11) (FM 3-11.11) (FM 34-45)
(FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: In a contemporary operating environment, an element is conducting combat operations. All communications systems are on hand and functional. Digital units have performed functionality checks and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element submits reports, such as operational occurrence reports, spot reports (SPOTREPs), and shelling reports (SHELREPs) to higher headquarters (HQ) in a timely manner. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. Reports should be in the correct format, as shown in this task, the appropriate field manual (FM), or the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Leaders submit the SPOTREP to higher HQ as required by the unit SOP or the situation. **NOTE: Digital units send reports through alert messaging using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS) according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).** a. Ensured that the SPOTREP included the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE). b. Dispatched the SPOTREP by the fastest means available; in a tactical situation, dispatched the SPOTREP within 5 minutes of receipt of the information. When necessary, the leaders submitted a partial report within the time constraints and updated it as additional information became available.		
* 2. Leaders submit the SHELREP, the mortar bombing report (MORTREP), and the bombing report (BOMREP) to the next higher HQ. **NOTE: The reports should include the following: The originating unit; the observer position; the direction; the time that the shelling began; the time that the shelling ended; the area that was bombed, shelled, rocketed, or mortared; the number and the nature of weapons and aircraft; the nature of fire (direct or indirect); the number, type, and caliber of shells, rockets, bombs, or mortar rounds; and the flash-to-bang time, damage, and angle of the fall or descent, as the time and the conditions permit.**		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Submitted the report within 30 minutes following the activity or consistent with the tactical situation. b. Submitted the report, even if it contained incomplete information. c. Ensured that the encryption conformed to the signal operation instructions (SOI).		
3. The radiotelephone operator (RATELO) submits a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) report to the net control station (NCS) within 10 minutes of notification of the activity. The report contains the following information: a. Item 1, the MIJI. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the numerals 022. b. Item 2, the type of interference. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the interference: meaconing - 1, intrusion - 2, jamming - 3, interference - 4. c. Item 3, the instrument affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the following numerals for the instrument affected: radio - 1, radar - 2, navigational aid - 3, satellite - 4, electro-optics - 5. d. Item 4, the frequency or the channel affected. When transmitting over nonsecure communications, encrypt the affected frequency. e. Item 5, complete the call sign of the affected station operator (for secure and nonsecure communications). f. Item 6, complete the grid coordinates of the affected station. When transmitting by nonsecure means, encrypt the coordinates.		
* 4. The leaders submit all operational occurrence reports as soon as the tactical situation permits. The information included— a. The line of departure (LD) crossing. b. The checkpoint arrival times. c. The rally point (RP) arrival time. d. The logistics report. e. The intelligence report.		
* 5. The leaders submit both verbal and written patrol reports as required by the unit SOP. The report included— a. The designation of the patrol. b. The date. c. The unit receiving the report. d. The name of the person submitting the report. e. The size and composition of the patrol. f. The mission. g. The departure and return times. h. The routes out and back. i. A terrain description, including the— (1) Type of terrain, such as dry, swamp, jungle, thickly wooded, high brush, or rocky. (2) Deepness of the ravines and the draws. (3) Size, type, strength, and condition of the bridges. (4) Effect on armored and wheeled vehicles. j. Data on the enemy, including— (1) The strength. (2) The disposition. (3) The condition of the defense. (4) The equipment and weapons. (5) The morale of the personnel.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) The exact location. (7) A shift in disposition. (8) The time that the activity was observed and the coordinates where the activity occurred. k. Any map corrections. l. Any miscellaneous information, including aspects of nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) warfare. m. The outcome of previous enemy encounters, including— (1) Enemy prisoners and their disposition. (2) The identification of enemy personnel. (3) Enemy causalities. (4) Captured documents and equipment. n. The condition of the patrol, including the disposition of the dead or wounded. o. Conclusions and recommendations. Include what was accomplished and any recommendations regarding the patrol equipment and tactics. p. The signature, grade or rank, and organization or unit of the patrol leader. q. Additional remarks by the interrogator and the signature of the interrogator. * 6. The leaders submit an NBC 1 report. a. Submitted the initial NBC 1 (within 5 minutes of the activity) and follow-up reports to the unit HQ. b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available (by flash precedence for the initial burst and immediate precedence for subsequent attacks). * 7. The leaders submit an NBC 4 report. a. Submitted the report to the unit HQ. b. Submitted the most accurate information possible, using the most secure means available. 8. The leaders submit a generic report. **NOTE: General reports are considered to be any report not covered in the outline above.** a. Submitted reports according to the unit SOPs. b. Sent reports in the correct formats. c. Reported information to the appropriate levels by the fastest means possible.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-2-1383	Disseminate Terrain Information (Products)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters

TASK: Prepare an Operation Order (OPORD) (Company/Platoon) (05-2-7008)
(FM 5-71-2) (FM 5-34)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is performing tactical operations in a contemporary operating environment. The company receives a new mission that requires the preparation of an OPORD. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The unit is linked to the task force (TF) tactical operations center (TOC). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The OPORD follows the intent of the commander, is understandable, and contains all of the information necessary to accomplish the mission. Digital units send and receive orders and reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader writes an OPORD following the five-paragraph format. **NOTE: Digital units write and disseminate the OPORD using the Army Battle Command System (ABCS), perform collaborative planning, and submit orders/requests and reports according to the unit tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP).** a. Ensured that the situation paragraph contained information about the enemy forces, friendly forces, attachments, and detachments. b. Stated the mission clearly. Included who, what, when, where, and why. c. Ensured that the execution paragraph included the intent of the commander, the subordinate unit instructions, and coordinating instructions. **NOTE: Address any environmental considerations in the coordinating instructions. Include specific measures to minimize environmental damage.** d. Ensured that the service support paragraph contained combat service support (CSS) and unit support instructions. If the paragraph was too long, used an annex. Otherwise, used the following paragraph sample format: (1) Material and services. (2) Medical. (3) Personnel. (4) Civil military. (5) As necessary. e. Ensured that the command and signal paragraphs specified the command post (CP) locations for supporting the units and gave the instructions for coordinating and establishing communications by different means (digital and FM). * 2. The element leader ensures that the necessary information is included and briefed to the subordinate elements. * 3. The element leader ensures that the order is disseminated or briefed in time to satisfy the one-third/two-third rule (allowing subordinates two-thirds of the available time).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-1-1389	Identify Geospatial Support Requirements
05-1-1391	Request a Standard Geospatial Product
05-1-1393	Request Nonstandard Geospatial Products
05-2-1380	Identify Terrain Information Requirements
05-4-1372	Disseminate Terrain Information Product
05-4-1376	Perform a Geospatial Collection Effort
05-6-0088	Coordinate Geospatial Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company Headquarters
Three Combat Support Element Platoon Headquarters
Three Earthmoving Sections
Three Dump Truck Sections
Three Equipment Sections

TASK: Install, Operate, and Maintain a Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) Frequency Hopping (FH) Net (11-5-1102.05-T01A)
(FM 24-19) (FM 20-3) (FM 24-18)
(FM 24-33) (FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team has been briefed and given extracts from the signal operation instructions (SOI) and the signal supplemental instructions (SSI), the appropriate loading devices with keys, a radio net diagram, maps, and grid coordinates. Subtasks 1 through 4 are done in the motor pool or staging area before going to the field location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The SINCGARS radio sets are operational according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) and the operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The supervisor checks all radios for completeness and operability. a. Ensured that the vehicular and manpack systems were assembled correctly. **WARNING: HIGH VOLTAGES EXIST AT CONNECTOR J1 ON THE MOUNTING ADAPTER. ENSURE THAT J1 IS COVERED OR CAPPED WHEN NOT IN USE.** b. Ensured that the operator logged the amp hours (manpack system only). c. Ensured that preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) were completed.		
* 2. The supervisor selects the site. a. Selected primary and alternate locations within the general site. b. Established and maintained camouflage discipline. c. Ensured that the location provided effective use of the terrain in an electronic warfare (EW) environment. d. Ensured that the location avoided interference from power lines and other friendly sources of frequency interference.		
3. Net members perform premission checks for a SINCGARS FH cold-start net opening. a. Performed before-operation PMCS. b. Loaded the transmission security key (TSK) using MX-10579 or MS-18290 (nonintegrated communications security [non-ICOM] only). c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (integrated communications security [ICOM] only). d. Loaded the traffic encryption key (TEK) using KYK-13.		
4. The net control station (NCS) performs premission checks for the SINCGARS FH cold-start net opening. a. Performed preoperational PMCS.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Loaded the TSK and the hop set using MX-10579 or MX18290 (non-ICOM only). c. Loaded the hop set using MX-18290 (ICOM only). d. Loaded the TEK using KYK-13. e. Loaded the FH sync-time according to the SOI/SSI. f. Loaded the cue frequency. g. Directed the alternate NCS to load the cue frequency, as required. h. Changed the net identification according to the SOI/SSI. 5. The NCS opens the net. a. Issued the net call in the secure mode on the MAN channel. b. Issued and sent the electronic countercountermeasures [ECCM] electronic remote fill (ERF) instructions. c. Set the channel switch to the hop set channel and issued the net call. d. Opened the net. e. Reset the channel switch to MAN and called the missing net members. f. Repeated the cold start. g. Set the FCTN switch to SQ ON. 6. Net members enter the net. a. Responded in the correct sequence to the net call. b. Stored the ERF, set the channel switch to the hop set channel, reset the channel switch to MAN, and set the FCTN switch to SQ ON. c. Responded in sequence to the NCS call. d. Reset the channel switch to MAN and the FCTN switch to LO if the member missed the ERF or heard no communications on the hop set channel. e. Responded in sequence to the NCS call. 7. Net members perform the late net entry (LNE), cue, and ERF method. a. Performed premission checks for an FH cold start. b. Loaded the cue frequency according to the SOI/SSI. c. Initiated the cue call. d. Reported into the net. e. Switched to the MAN channel and conducted the cold-start net opening. 8. Net members use proper radio procedures. a. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum. b. Used the lowest power setting required to communicate. c. Used authorized call signs and frequencies. d. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. e. Operated on a random schedule. f. Adhered to net discipline. 9. Team members recognize different types of interference. a. Checked the RT signal (SIG) display when it was not transmitting. **NOTE: If the display was constantly or intermittently higher than 1, then the members disconnected the antenna to determine if the interference was internal or external.** b. Initiated the ECCM for external symptoms. 10. Team members initiate ECCM actions. a. Continued to operate. b. Did not disclose the effectiveness of the jamming in the clear. c. Reduced the transmission speed. d. Increased the transmitter power. e. Relocated the antenna.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Prepared and forwarded a meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) feeder report to the supervisor in the United States message text format (USMTF).		
11. Team members extend the range of the radio station. a. Inspected the OE-254 for serviceability. b. Installed the OE-254 antenna using the team method. c. Accomplished the transaction from the whip antenna to the OE-254 without unnecessary interruption of service.		
12. The retransmission team establishes a retransmission site. a. Installed and connected the OE-254 antennas. b. Performed preoperational PMCS. c. Loaded the CMD NET MAN frequency in radio C. d. Loaded the CMD NET MAN and cue frequencies in radio D. e. Loaded the TSK and the TEK into both radios (non-ICOM only). f. Loaded the hop set and the TEK into both radios (ICOM only). g. Cued the LNE using radio D. h. Stored the ERF into both radios. i. Changed radio D to RTS MAN and cue frequencies and TRS net ID. j. Set the FCTN switches of radios C and D to RXMT.		
13. Team members initiate the net radio interface (NRI) call. a. Called the NRI operator on the NRI hop set channel, or initiated a cue call on the net control interface (NCI) cue channel, as required. b. Switched to NRI MAN channel. c. Established communications on the NRI hop set channel. d. Identified the telephone subscriber by call sign or telephone number.		
14. Team members maintain the SINCGARS radio net. a. Performed PMCS, as required. b. Performed fault isolation, as required. c. Performed user-level maintenance, as required. d. Evacuated the faulty equipment, as required. e. Completed the necessary entries in the maintenance record. f. Reported all uncorrected deficiencies to the immediate supervisor.		
15. The NCS closes the net. a. Called the net and issued closedown instructions. b. Acknowledged the net members. c. Received acknowledgement in the correct sequence. d. Performed after-operation PMCS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
05-4-1005	Perform Preventive-Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENT: Company Headquarters

TASK: Maintain Company Strength (12-2-0321.05-T01A)
(FM 12-6) (FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company has resumed combat operations. Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. During operations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level I threat; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Casualty processing and replacement actions continue during lulls in combat operations. The task may occur in a field environment or during military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT). A tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The personnel situation report (SITREP), which accounts for all company personnel, is reported daily or as required. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to update the common operational picture (COP) and situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when performing it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The headquarters (HQ) element collects strength information reports from subordinate sections. a. Logged the SITREP and other personnel information. b. Verified strength data. c. Corrected erroneous and incomplete data.		
2. The HQ element processes information. a. Consolidated the personnel information of subordinate elements. b. Determined critical shortages and cross-leveling requirements. c. Updated the battle roster. d. Prepared a hasty personnel status report (PSR) and strength reports. e. Submitted PSR to higher HQ according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		
3. The HQ element processes replacements. a. Briefed replacements on the mission, tactical situation, company policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or company orientation. b. Added soldiers' names to the battle roster. c. Inspected critical clothing and equipment for shortages. d. Coordinated the issue of needed items. e. Arranged the movement of replacements to the platoon of assignment.		
* 4. The first sergeant (1SG) disseminates strength information. a. Briefed the commander on unit strength and replacement status. b. Forwarded the personnel SITREP or hasty strength reports, casualty feeder reports, and witness statements to the supporting Adjutant (US Army) (S1) section. c. Informed subordinate sections of projected replacements.		
* 5. The company commander performs strength management functions. a. Directed cross leveling.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Verified combat critical personnel requirements. c. Reviewed strength management reports. d. Spot-checked strength information processing. e. Briefed superiors on unit strength and replacement status.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: Company
Company Headquarters

TASK: Maintain Troop Morale and Combat Capability (12-2-0338.05-T01A)
(FM 22-51) (AR 27-1) (AR 600-15)
(AR 608-99) (FM 21-20) (FM 6-22.5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is preparing to resume combat operations. During preparations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level 1 threat; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC); and terrorist attacks. Preparations occur during lulls in combat operations. Digital units have performed functionality checks, and systems are operational. The task may occur in a field environment or during military operations on urbanized terrain (MOUT). The tactical standing operating procedure (TACSOP) is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company follows and applies techniques to counter performance degradation and to enhance combat effectiveness. Digital units send and receive reports using frequency-modulated (FM) or digital means to maintain and inform subordinate units of the common operational picture (COP) and maintain situational awareness (SA). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The company commander executes actions to keep soldiers informed. a. Issued warning orders, operation orders (OPORDs), and fragmentary orders (FRAGOs) to the lowest possible level. b. Provided soldiers with an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situations. c. Instructed the soldiers of the leaders' intentions. d. Spoke positively concerning unit mission, purpose, and abilities. e. Encouraged a positive attitude throughout the unit. f. Reduced and prevented rumors. g. Disseminated command information to include the availability of religious support.		
* 2. The company commander or first sergeant (1SG) implements the unit sleep plan. a. Developed the unit sleep plan. b. Provided safe, secure areas away from vehicles and other activities for sleep. c. Provided an opportunity for the maximum number of soldiers to sleep or rest where possible. d. Specified and provided time for leaders to sleep or rest. e. Adjusted the plan to the tactical situation.		
* 3. All leaders implement task rotation restructuring procedures. a. Cross-trained soldiers on critical tasks. b. Developed plans for the rotation of soldiers between demanding and nondemanding tasks. c. Assigned two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy, such as mathematical computations (duplicate efforts).		
* 4. All leaders implement stress-coping and stress management techniques.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Taught soldiers relaxation techniques before deployment. b. Ensured that the unit implemented a buddy system to observe signs of stress or battle fatigue among soldiers and leaders. c. Ensured that soldiers used relaxation techniques when needed. d. Facilitated the acceptance of newly arrived soldiers into the unit. e. Reintegrated returned-to-duty, stressed, or battle-fatigued soldiers into the unit.		
* 5. The company commander or 1SG implements stress treatment techniques. a. Developed a plan to deal with mild and more serious stress or battle fatigue cases. b. Assigned soldiers, who showed signs of stress or battle fatigue, to perform simpler tasks. c. Ensured that soldiers were supportive in speech and behavior toward soldiers suffering from stress or battle fatigue. d. Moved stressed or battle-fatigued soldiers who did not show improvement after resting to unit trains, supporting units, or medical facilities. e. Referred soldiers who had serious signs of stress or battle fatigue and those who were not recuperating for medical care.		
* 6. The company command group provides morale, welfare, and recreation (MWR) support. a. Implemented sports programs as the situation allowed. b. Provided hot rations. c. Coordinated postal support. d. Coordinated combat payments. e. Coordinated clothing exchange and bath support. f. Coordinated the issue and sale of soldier comfort, morale, and welfare items. g. Coordinated legal support. h. Advised higher headquarters on the unit MWR status.		
* 7. All leaders maintain soldiers' fitness. a. Monitored soldiers' fitness. b. Conducted physical training (as the time and combat situation allowed). c. Implemented personal hygiene and field sanitation procedures. d. Corrected problem areas. e. Briefed the commander on the soldiers' fitness status.		
* 8. The company commander administers the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ). a. Evaluated evidence and determined the appropriate disposition of reported violations of the UCMJ. b. Administered nonjudicial punishment. c. Forwarded charges for trial by court-martial.		
* 9. The company commander disposes of disciplinary infractions and misconduct by other-than-judicial or nonjudicial proceedings. a. Counseled soldiers for indebtedness. b. Counseled soldiers for nonsupport of dependents. c. Initiated letters of reprimand or admonition. d. Initiated administrative separations.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

External Evaluation

6-1. General. An external evaluation is used to assess the ability of a unit to perform its mission. Units may modify this evaluation based on the METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. Selected T&EOs from Chapter 5 that involve the total unit and employ a realistic OPFOR and the MILES are used for the evaluation. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander can identify the unit strengths and weaknesses. These strengths and weakness are the basis for future training and resource allocations.

6-2. Preparing the Evaluation. The commander must standardize evaluation procedures to accurately measure the capabilities of the unit. Table 6-1 is a sample evaluation scenario that contains the mission and the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Figure 6-1 is a graphic representation of the scenario. Selective tailoring is required because it is not possible to evaluate every task. Procedures for developing the evaluation are discussed below.

Table 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario

Event	Action	Proposed Time Frame	Estimated Time Allotted
1	Conduct Preevaluation Operations	Before start time	
2	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures		
3	Issue a Road March Order	Day 1 - 0200 hours	2 hours
4	Conduct a Tactical Road March	0400 hours	5 hours
5	Occupy an AA	0900 hours	3 hours
Module 1			
6	Receive a WO	1200 hours	2 hours
7	Support Combat Operations (Mobility)		
8	Conduct Unit Support Operations		
9	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
10	Conduct Administrative Operations		
11	Conduct Intelligence Operations		
Module 2			
12	Conduct Unit Support Operations	Day 2 - 1400 hours	
13	Receive a WO		
14	Support Combat Operations (Countermobility)		
15	Perform Unit Maintenance Operations		
16	Move to an AAR Site and Conduct an AAR		
17	ENDEX		

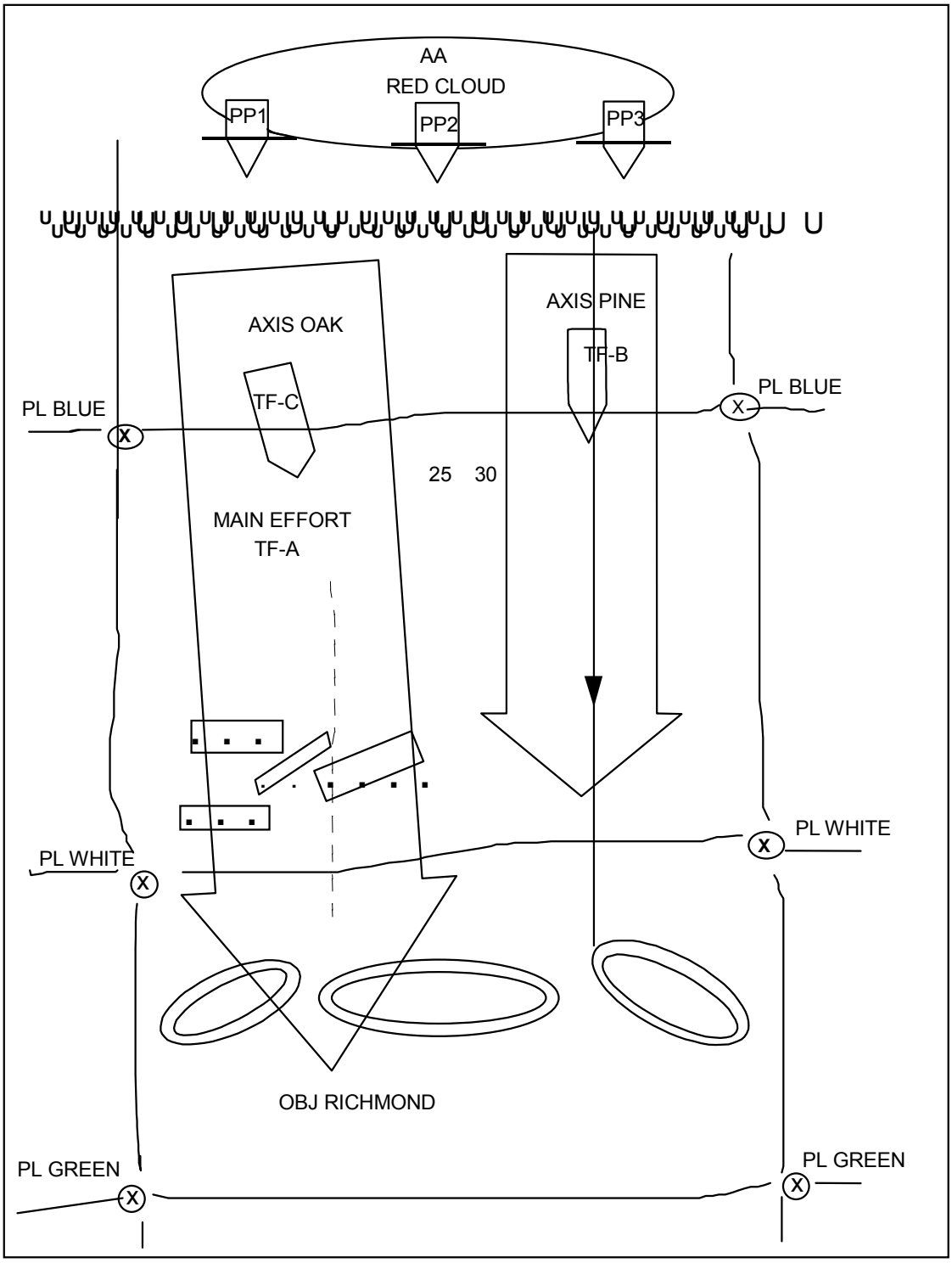


Figure 6-1. Sample Graphic Illustration Scenario

a. Identify the missions for evaluating each element from Figure 2-2. Record the selected missions on the unit proficiency work sheet (UPW) (Figure 6-2).

Unit: ______________________________ Date: ____________________

Number	Unit Mission/Task	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Section/ Squad	Unit Overall Rating and Remarks
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	

NOTE: If more space is required for remarks, use the back side of this form.

Figure 6-2. Sample Unit Proficiency Work Sheet

b. List each mission on a separate task summary sheet (Figure 6-3).

TASK SUMMARY SHEET

Mission:

Task Titles	T&EO Number	Evaluation	
		GO	NO-GO

Observer/controller signature: _____

NOTE: A separate task summary sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated. O/C comments may be placed on an enclosure to the task summary sheet.

Figure 6-3. Sample Task Summary Sheet

c. Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheet, which is used for recording the results of the evaluation.

d. Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order that they logically occur in the detailed scenario (Table 6-1). Group the selected missions and tasks into parts for continuous operations. The parts can be interrupted at logical points to assess the MILES casualties and to conduct in-process after action reviews (AARs).

6-3. Resourcing and Planning. Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requisitioned. Table 6-2 is a consolidated list of the support requirements for this evaluation. It is based on experience with the scenario in Table 6-1. The evaluating HQ must prepare its own consolidated support requirements.

Table 6-2. Sample Consolidated Support Requirements

CONSOLIDATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR FTX 5-1-E0001			
Ammunition	**DODIC**	**Estimated Basic Load**	
5.56 mm	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm	A111	400 rounds per M60	
5.56 mm	A075	250 rounds per SAW	
Caliber .50	A598	250 rounds per M2	
ATWESS (AT-4)	L367	15 each per company (inert)	
Hand grenade, body, M69	G811	2 per man	
Hand grenade, fuse (practice)	G878	2 per man	
Simulators, projectile, ground burst	L598	50 per exercise	
Simulator, hand grenade, M116 series	L601	20 per squad (without live demolitions to simulate demolition) or 6 per squad	
Demolitions (See note below.)			
MICLIC		4 per company with 2 reloads	
Bangalore torpedo kit		1 per squad	
Charge, block TNT		50 per squad	
MDI M11, 12, 13, 14		15 each (total 60) per platoon	
MDI igniters		60 per platoon	
Time fuse		500 feet per platoon	
Satchel charge, M183		30 per platoon	
40-pound shape charge		12 per platoon	
Smoke grenades, white		60 per platoon	
Smoke pot, ground		10 per platoon	
Mines			
Other Items			
Batteries, BA 200 (6-volt)		50 each	
Batteries, BA 3090 (9-volt)		400 each	
Class IV			
Concertina wire			
Pickets			
Staples			
Barbed wire			
MILES Equipment	**Company**	**Evaluators**	**OPFOR**
APC	13		13/4
Caliber .50 system	15		13/4
M240 system	2		
M19 blank firing adapter	15		13/4
M16 system	120		120/28
M60 machine gun system	13		13/2
Controller guns		8	
Small arms alignment fixture		2	
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked (according to their use) during the exercise.			

6-4. Selecting and Training Observers/Controllers. A successful evaluation depends heavily on selecting O/Cs with the proper experience, training them to fulfill their responsibilities, and supervising them throughout the evaluation.

a. A six-person O/C team comprised of the following personnel is suggested for performing an external evaluation:

(1) Senior O/C.

(2) Staff O/C.

(3) Operations O/C.

(4) Administration O/C.

(5) Logistics O/C.

(6) NBC O/C.

b. The O/Cs must have a thorough knowledge of the unit mission, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They must understand the overall operation of the unit and how it is integrated into and supports force-projection operations. Team members must have a working knowledge of the common individual and collective tasks in areas such as local-defense convoy procedures, communications, and NBC operations. One member of the team must have detailed expertise in the NBC and local-defense, common-task areas. The O/Cs should be equal in grade to the soldier in charge of the element they are evaluating, and they should have previous experience in the position being evaluated. All team members must be able to make objective evaluations, function effectively as a team member, and state their findings in reports and briefings.

c. O/C training focuses on providing O/Cs with a general understanding of the overall evaluation, providing each O/C with a detailed understanding of the specific duties and responsibilities, and building a spirit of teamwork. O/C training includes—

(1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master events list, and the specific evaluation purposes and objectives.

(2) The unit METL and its linkage to the T&EOs and other materials contained in this ARTEP MTP.

(3) The O/C team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.

(4) The detailed responsibilities of individual team members, with special emphasis on the master events list items that are their responsibility. These include—

(a) A review of written instructions and materials contained in the O/Cs folders.

(b) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.

(c) The O/C communications and command and control (C2) systems.

(d) Safety procedures.

(e) Evaluation data collection OPLAN and procedures.

(f) AAR procedures and techniques.

(5) A talk-through of the entire evaluation, which includes war-gaming all items on the master events list in order of their occurrence and reviewing each team member’s responsibilities and anticipated problems.

d. The senior O/C supervises the operation of the team. He provides the team leadership, focuses his efforts on ensuring that the O/Cs fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of the team members, ensures close coordination among

team members, holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the unit AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-5. Selecting and Training Opposing Forces. The OPFOR support for an external evaluation of the unit is limited to two squads of dismounted infantry and two to five individuals who serve as enemy agents. Although OPFOR support is only used for some tasks, proper training and employment of this force is important to ensure a proper assessment of the unit capabilities.

a. The OPFOR commander should be a company grade officer or a senior NCO who is well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. In addition to the duties and responsibilities in leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander serves as a part-time member of the O/C team. In order to fulfill O/C responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in O/C planning and training activities. He must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements are trained, organized, and equipped to operate in a manner that depicts threat forces as realistically as possible. Their training includes—

(1) Threat tactics and rules for engagement.

(2) OPFOR missions and responsibilities.

(3) OPFOR tasks and standards.

(4) Threat weapons and equipment, if available.

(5) C2.

(6) Safety.

6-6. Conducting the Evaluation. The senior O/C has overall responsibility for conducting the evaluation. He orchestrates the overall evaluation and the support provided by various individuals and elements that are specially selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

a. O/Cs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit.

b. The HQ two echelons above the unit being evaluated should select and train the control element for the evaluation. It issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR.

c. All exercise participants and supporting personnel must ensure that every facet of the evaluation is conducted in a safe manner. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must take prompt action to halt them and must advise their superiors of the situation.

6-7. Recording External Evaluation Information.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for implementing the evaluation scoring system. Although the final evaluation is developed by the senior O/C, the full team participates in this process. Their reports reflect the overall ability of the combat engineer unit to accomplish its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation scoring system is based on an evaluation of the unit performance of each mission-essential task and any other collective task contained in the overall evaluation plan. Use the following four steps for the evaluation:

(1) Identify the ARTEP MTP T&EOs that correspond to each of the evaluation plan tasks.

(2) Use T&EO standards to evaluate the unit performances of the tasks. Do this for each evaluation plan task.

(3) Record on the T&EO a GO for each performance measure performed to standard and a NO-GO for each performance measure not performed to standard.

(4) Record the unit overall capability to perform the task by using GO/NO-GO information recorded on each T&EO. Use the following definitions as guidance in making this determination:

(a) GO - The unit successfully accomplished the task or performance measure to standards.

(b) NO-GO - The unit did not accomplish the task or performance measure to standard.

c. Use other locally designed reports that are approved by the senior O/C and prescribed in the evaluation plan to collect the evaluation information. These reports assist the team in recording the information concerning the unit capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information will assist the senior O/C to determine the unit overall final rating. The reports listed below can be used to collect the information.

(1) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-4). This report is used to record personnel and equipment status.

(2) Environmental data sheet (Figure 6-5). This report is used to record information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during the evaluation period.

(3) Personnel and equipment loss report (Figure 6-6). This report is used to record information concerning the element personnel and equipment losses during OPFOR engagements.

UNIT DATA SHEET

1. Unit designation: Date:

2. Unit leaders (circle the most appropriate selection):

Position	Rank	Time in Unit (Months)				
Commander	LTC/MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Executive Officer	MAJ/CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S3	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S2	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S1	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion S4	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Battalion Maintenance Officer	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
A Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
B Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
C Company Commander	CPT/1LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19

3. Unit strength (excluding leaders):

4. Equipment shortages (major items):

5. Comments:

Observer/controller signature:

Figure 6-4. Sample Unit Data Sheet

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET
Exercise number and description:
Date and time the exercise started:
Date and time the exercise ended:
1. Weather conditions (circle the appropriate description): Clear Partly Cloudy Cloudy Hazy Rain Snow Fog Other: Temperature:
2. Ground conditions (circle the appropriate description): Dry Wet Ice Snow Other:
3. Light conditions (circle the appropriate description): Day Night Moon phase: None 1/4 1/2 3/4 Full Average range of visibility due to light:
4. Terrain (circle the appropriate description): Flat Rolling Mountains Jungle Desert Urban Artic Other: Top soil: Sandy Rocky Clay Other: Average range of visibility due to terrain:
5. Remarks:

Figure 6-5. Sample Environmental Data Sheet

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT					
Mission Title or Task Number	**Date and Time of Enemy Contact**	**Friendly KIA/WIA**	**Enemy KIA/WIA**	**Friendly Vehicles Destroyed**	**Enemy Vehicles Destroyed**
Comments:					

Figure 6-6. Sample Personnel and Equipment Loss Report

6-8. Preparing After-Action Reviews. AARs provide direct feedback to unit members by involving them in the diagnosis process and by enabling them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation. In this way, participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning.

a. The senior O/C is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through the after-action phases.

b. Key steps in the AAR process are—

(1) Planning. Planning for AARs is started in the exercise preparation activities long before the start of the action evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical breakpoints and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed subsequently. Qualified O/Cs are selected and trained in the AAR process as part of O/C training. This phase also includes the identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) Preparation. AAR preparation starts with the beginning of the actual evaluation. In addition to observing the unit performing its critical tasks, this phase includes the review of the training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed and times and attendance are established. AAR information is gathered from applicable O/Cs and unit personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) Conduct. AARs are conducted at logical breakpoints in the exercise and at the end of the evaluation. When AAR participants have assembled, the AAR begins with the senior O/C introducing the session with a statement of the AAR purpose, the establishment of the AAR ground rules and procedures, and a restatement of the training and evaluation objectives. A successful AAR includes the following guidelines:

(a) AARs are not critiques, but are professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior O/C guides the discussion in a manner to ensure that participants openly discuss the lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among O/Cs and unit personnel.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participates in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened, but also why it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Participants review the sequence of events associated with hazards and the risk assessment made before the exercise. As a minimum, the review should address hazards that presented themselves (but were not identified) and each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it could be avoided in the future.

(g) Events not directly related to major events are not examined.

(h) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(i) The AAR end result is that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their critical tasks.

NOTE: Reference materials for conducting an AAR are Training Circulars (TC) 25-6 and 25-20 and FM 25-101.

APPENDIX A - EXERCISE OPERATION ORDER

For use of the OPORD, refer to the exercise outlined in Chapter 4 and to Figure A-1.

OPERATION ORDER

(classification)
FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY

Operation Order _____ 20_____ Copy ___ of ___ copies
25th Engineer Battalion

Task Organization:

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. Contact with the enemy has been broken. The enemy has withdrawn deep to the rear. It is being reinforced with motorized rifle forces and is preparing to counterattack within 24 hours. The enemy is expected to use nonpersistent nerve agents. Enemy air is expected to be active in the area. The latest INTSUM indicates that the enemy may have a platoon-size combat outpost in the battalion sector. Enemy units occupying the combat outpost are half strength. Counterattacking forces are expected to be full strength.

b. Friendly Forces. 1st Brigade conducts a passage of lines to seize Objective Richmond. On order, 1st Brigade continues the attack forward of Phase Line (PL) Green.

(1) Missions of units on left and right flanks, as required.

(2) Supporting engineer unit missions, as required.

(3) Supporting fires: 2nd Battalion, 61st Field Artillery is in direct support.

2. MISSION. The TF conducts a passage of lines and attacks to seize and secure Objective Richmond no later than 090600Z. On order, the TF prepares to continue movement forward of PL Green.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of the Operation: See the overlay developed by the trainer in the field.

(1) Maneuver. TF 1-25 departs AA Red Cloud with two company teams abreast and two teams following. Team A leads on Axis Oak and is the main attack. Team B leads on Axis Pine and is supporting the attack. Teams C and D follow on Axis Oak and Pine respectively. The commander's intent is to gain contact with the enemy and locate and fix the main body of the enemy so that the brigade can conduct envelopments to destroy the enemy. It is necessary to destroy enemy combat outposts. The unit must quickly reorganize and continue movement until the unit finds the main body. The company team that makes initial contact will attempt to fight through and destroy the enemy. If the unit cannot, they will provide a base of fire for maneuver with the remaining TF. The unit will continue movement to PL Green if no contact is gained. The unit will continue movement past PL Green on order.

(2) Fire support. The priority of fires is to Team A initially and then to the team that is in contact (once contact is made).

Figure A-1. Sample OPORD

(3) Mines, obstacles, and fortifications. Critical checkpoints and identified obstacles are shown on the obstacle overlay.

b. Subunit Missions (as required).

c. Engineer. Priority of support is to the two lead teams. On order, conduct breaching operations in support of the team in contact. Be prepared to support a hasty defense on order.

d. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Report all enemy contact.

(2) Report all enemy obstacles.

(3) Report crossing of the PLs.

(4) Additional information, as required.

4. SERVICE AND SUPPORT. Per the brigade SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

a. Command.

b. Signal.

(1) Current SOI.

(2) Radio-listening silence until initial contact is made with the enemy.

FOR TRAINING PURPOSES ONLY
(classification)

Figure A-1. Sample OPORD (continued)

APPENDIX B - THREAT ANALYSIS

B-1. Introduction.

a. Dramatic changes in Europe and within the former Soviet Union have reduced the likelihood of an east-west military confrontation in Europe. The threat in Europe has not gone away completely, but it is less immediate and has changed in nature. Despite reductions, Russia will still have the largest army in Europe. Regardless of the stated peaceful intentions of current Russian political leaders, the Russian Armed Forces still possesses formidable capabilities, and those capabilities will remain, should conditions and intentions change. Other former Soviet republics are forming their own armed forces and could pose threats to each other or to other countries in the region. In this time of turmoil and uncertainty, the former Soviet military power remains a potentially dangerous challenge to US and North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) security. However, this remnant of the former Soviet threat is just one of many.

b. Many other nations are obtaining or developing sophisticated weaponry. Various regional conflicts could cause the US to intervene bilaterally or as part of a multinational coalition to protect our interests or those of our allies. Other potential conflict areas could call for a variety of responses by either the US, the former Soviet republics, or both. The threat may come in an organized military form, which may or may not follow the former Soviet model. It may also come in the form of insurgencies, terrorism, or narcotics trafficking. The US Army needs to be prepared to respond to this broad spectrum of potential threats that it could encounter in various contingencies.

B-2. Global Threats. Modern weapons and the capability to project military power to great distances beyond its own national borders would characterize a global-type threat, such as the former Soviet one. Against such a potential adversary, the threat to rear operations would include the following:

- Armored or mechanized forces breaking into the rear area.
- Airborne, airmobile, or amphibious assault forces inserted into the rear area.
- Long-range artillery, surface-to-surface missiles, or air strikes targeting rear-area assets.
- NBC weapons.
- Radio-electronic combat aimed at jamming or destroying our communications means and disrupting our C2.
- Agents and saboteurs.

B-3. Regional Threats. Regional threats, such as Iraq or North Korea, have less capability to project power. However, they may have some of the same weapons and organizations as a global threat. In fact, lessening superpower tensions are contributing significantly to the proliferation of sophisticated weaponry to emerging nations. This applies not only to conventional ground and air weapons, but also to chemical and nuclear weapons and missile systems. A mature regional power, possibly with a global power as a major source of its military hardware, emphasizes the ability to project its forces throughout a given region.

B-4. Local Threats. Local threats have even more localized objectives and little capability to project power beyond their own borders or their immediate neighbors. They generally have less modern equipment than global or regional threat powers or at least a limited variety of modern weapons. Their equipment may include modern small arms and light artillery (such as mortars, howitzers, and rocket launchers), but often does not include sophisticated weapons such as long-range conventional artillery or high-performance aircraft. A local threat may be heavily supported by a regional threat or even by a global power. For example, in the past, Cuba assisted Soviet-backed movements in Angola, Nicaragua, and Ethiopia. This outside influence will often be reflected in the equipment, organization, or tactics of the local threat forces. However, the actions of a local threat are often limited to insurgencies, civil wars, or

border disputes. Insurgents, especially those with outside help, may be able to purchase modern weapons, but may not have developed a logistics base able to sustain continuous conflict. Therefore, they often concentrate on guerrilla tactics, sabotage, assassinations, booby traps, or explosives to achieve their objectives.

B-5. Special Situations.

a. The threat in special situations includes terrorism. Terrorism may satisfy the objectives of different types of threats discussed above. Terrorists are the least likely threat to use conventional forces and thus are the hardest to anticipate or to train against. Terrorist tactics include the following:

- Assassinating or maiming.
- Arson.
- Bombing.
- Hijacking, kidnapping, or hostage taking.
- Raids and seizure of facilities.
- Sabotage.
- Hoaxes (such as bomb threats).

Terrorists may also be able to obtain weapons of mass destruction. A political leadership that supports terrorism, as in Iraq, may control such NBC weapons. If nuclear weapons are too difficult to obtain, terrorists may instead employ chemical or biological weapons.

b. Narcotics trafficking is another special-condition threat. It may be supported or tolerated by a global power for political or economic reasons. It may also be tied in with regional or local threat powers or with terrorism. There is often a marriage of convenience between insurgent groups and the drug cartels. The cartels can spend significant amounts of money on the latest in technology for communications and security to protect their operations. They can also buy weapons and otherwise finance regional insurgencies and cross-border conflicts.

B-6. Bottom Line. The threat to rear operations includes all of the above categories. These threat categories are not mutually exclusive and may overlap with one another.

APPENDIX C - METRIC CONVERSION CHART

Table C-1. Metric Conversion Chart

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
Length		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.04470	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
Volume		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
Weight		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
Metric Units	**Multiplied By**	**Equals US Units**
Length		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
Volume		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
Weight		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds

GLOSSARY

1LT
first lieutenant

1SG
first sergeant

5 Ss and T
search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag

AA
avenue of approach; assembly area; antiaircraft; anchor assembly

AAR
after-action review; after-action report

abatis
A defensive obstacle formed by felled trees with sharpened branches facing the enemy.

ABCS
Army Battle Command System

AC
active component; alternating current

ACE
ammunition, casualties, and equipment; air combat element (NATO); analysis and control element; aviation combat element (USMC); armored combat earthmover (M9)

ADC
area damage control

ADR
airfield damage repair; area damage report; air base damage repair

AHD
antihandling device

AN/PSS-12
hand-held, portable mine-detecting set

AO
area of operations

AOAP
Army Oil Analysis Program

AOR
area of responsibility

AP
antipersonnel

APC

armored personnel carrier

AR
Army regulation; armor; angle of repose

ARTEP
Army Training and Evaluation Program

ASAS
All-Source Analysis System

ASL
authorized stockage list

AT
antiterrorism; antitank

ATTN
attention

ATWESS
antitank weapon effects signature simulator; Antitank Weapon Effects Simulator System

BCOC
base cluster operations center

BDAR
battle damage assessment and repair

BDOC
base defense operations center

berm
A uniform soil embankment.

BF
battle fatigue; board feet

BMO
battalion maintenance officer

BOM
bill of materials

BOMREP
bombing report

BOS
battlefield operating system

C2
command and control

CANA
convulsant antidote for nerve agents

CATS
combined arms training strategy

CDM
chemical downwind message

CFX
command field exercise

CHS
combat health support

COA
course of action

COMEX
communications exercise

COMMZ
communications zone

COMSEC
communications security

CONUS
continental United States

COP
common operational picture

CP
command post; checkpoint

CPR
cardiovascular pulmonary resuscitation; cardiopulmonary resuscitation

CPT
captain

CPX
command post exercise

CS
combat support; Costa Rica; o-clorobenzylidine malononitrile

CSS
combat service support

DA
Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action

DA Pam
Department of the Army Pamphlet

DC
Dental Corps; District of Columbia; direct current

DD
Department of Defense

DMMC
division material management center

DOD
Department of Defense

DODIC
Department of Defense identification code

DRS
direct religious support; Digital Reconnaissance System

DTSS
Digital Topographic Support System

EA
each; engagement area

ECCM
electronic countercountermeasures

EEFI
essential elements of friendly information

EMO
electronic media only

ENDEX
end of exercise

engr
engineer

EOD
explosive ordnance disposal

EPW
enemy prisoner of war

ERF
electronic remote fill; electronic countercountermeasures (ECCM) remote fill

EW
electronic warfare

FBCB2
Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below

FH
field hospital; frequency hopping

field manual (FM)

A DA publication that contains doctrine that prescribes how the Army and its organizations function on the battlefield in terms of missions, organizations, personnel, and equipment. The level of detail should facilitate an understanding of "what" and "how" for commanders and staffs to execute the missions and tasks. An FM may also be used to publish selected alliance doctrinal publications that are not readily integrated into other doctrinal literature.

final protection fires (FPF)
An immediately available prearranged barrier of fire designed to impede enemy movement across defensive lines or areas.

FM
field manual; frequency-modulated; frequency modulation

FO
forward observer

FPF
final protective fire; final protection fires

FPL
final protective line

FRAGO
fragmentary order

FRAGO (fragmentary order)
An abbreviated form of an operation order (usually issued on a day-to-day basis) that eliminates the need for restating information contained in a basic operation order.

FS
fire support; foresight; Fort Sill

FST
field sanitation team; fire support team

FTX
field training exercise

GRREG
graves registration

HMEE
high-mobility engineer excavator

HN
host nation

HQ
headquarters

ICOM
imbedded communications; Intercommunications System; integrated communications security

INTSUM
intelligence summary

KIA
killed in action

LCE
load-carrying equipment

LD
line of departure

LNE
late net entry

LOC
lines of communication; location

LOG PAC
logistics package

LOGPAC
logistics package; logistical package

LTC
lieutenant colonel

LZ
landing zone

MACOM
major Army command

MAJ
major

MANSCEN
Maneuver Support Center

MAPEX
map exercise

MCS
Maneuver Control System

MCSR
materiel condition status report

MDI
modernized demolition initiator

METL
mission-essential task list

METT-TC
mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations

MHE
materials-handling equipment

MIA
missing In action

MICLIC
mine clearing line charge

MIJI
meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference

MILES
Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System

mm
millimeter(s)

MO
Missouri; monthly

MOPP
mission-oriented protective posture

MOPP2
mission-oriented protective posture Level 2 (mask carried/worn, protective suit and boots worn, and gloves carried)

MOPP4
mission-oriented protective posture Level 4 (mask, protective suit, boots, and gloves worn)

MORTREP
mortar bombing report

MOS
military occupational specialty; minimum operating strip

MOUT
military operations on urbanized terrain

MP
military police

MRO
material release order

MSR
main supply route

MSRT
mobile subscriber radiotelephone terminal

MTF
medical-treatment facility

MTP
mission training plan; MOS training plan

MWR
morale, welfare, and recreation

NATO
North Atlantic Treaty Organization

NBC
nuclear, biological, and chemical

NBC 1 Report
Observer's Initial Report. This report is used by the observing unit to give basic, initial, and follow-up data about an NBC attack. This report is sent by platoons and companies to the battalion headquarters or by designated observers to the division NBC Center (NBCC).

NBC 4 Report
Monitoring and Survey Report. This report is used to report NBC hazards detected by a unit through monitoring, survey, or reconnaissance. This report is prepared and submitted by company-level organizations.

NBC 5 Report
Actual Contaminated Areas Report. Once the NBC reports are posted on the situation map, the division prepares an NBC 5 report showing the contaminated area. The preferred method of dissemination is by overlay.

NCI
net control interface

NCO
noncommissioned officer

NCOER
noncommissioned officer evaluation report

NCOIC
noncommissioned officer in charge

NCS
net control station

No.
number

non-ICOM
nonintegrated communications security

NRI
net radio interface

NSN
national stock number; nonstandard number

O/C
observer/controller

OBSDOC
obstacle document

OEG
operation exposure guide; operational-exposure guidance

OIC
officer in charge

OP
observation post; operational procedure

OPFOR
opposing forces

OPLAN
operation plan

opn
operation

OPORD
operation order

OPORD (operation order)
A directive issued by a commander to subordinate commanders for the purpose of effecting the coordinated execution of a plan of action.

OPSEC
operations security

PAC
personnel and administration center

pam
pamphlet

PCC
precombat check

PCI
photo coverage indexes; precombat inspection

PD
points of departure; priority designator

PDDE
power-driven decontamination equipment

PDS
personnel daily summary

PIR
priority intelligence requirements

PL
phase line; plastic limit; Poland

PLL
prescribed load list

PMCS
preventive-maintenance checks and services

POL
petroleum, oils, and lubricants

POS/NAV
position/navigation

PSG
platoon sergeant

PSR
personnel status report

PVNTMED
preventive medicine

QC
quality control

radiac
radiation, detection, indication, and computation

RAOC
rear-area operations center

RATELO
radiotelephone operator

RC
rapid cure; reserve component

reg
Regiment; regulation; register

release point
A well-defined point on a route at which the elements composing a column return under the authority of their respective commanders. Each element continues its movement toward its own appropriate destination.

RES
radiation exposure status

ROE
rules of engagement

ROI
rules of interaction

RP
Republic of Philippines; release point; rally point; reference point; red phosphorus

RT
radius of target; receiver/transmitter

RTD
return to duty

RXMT
retransmit

S1
Adjutant (US Army)

S2
Intelligence Officer (US Army)

S3
Operations and Training Officer (US Army)

S4
Supply Officer (US Army)

SA
semiannually; situational awareness

SALUTE
size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment

SATS
Standard Army Training System

SAW
squad automatic weapon

SB
supply bulletin; switchboard

SCATMINE
scatterable mine

SCPE
simplified collective-protection equipment

SHELREP
shelling report

SHORAD
shore-range air defense

SHTU
simplified handheld terminal unit

SIG
signal

SINCGARS
Single-Channel, Ground and Airborne Radio System

SITREP
situation report

situation report (SITREP)
A report giving the situation in the area of the reporting unit or formation.

SM
soldier's manual

SOFA
Status of Forces Agreement

SOI
signal operation instructions

SOP
standing operating procedure

SOP (standing operating procedure)
A set of instructions covering those features of operations that lend themselves to a definite or standardized procedure without loss of effectiveness. The procedure is applicable unless ordered otherwise.

SP
start point; strongpoint; self-propelled; Spain

SPOTREP
spot report

SSA
supply support activity

SSI
standing signal instructions; signal supplemental instructions

STANAG
standardization agreement

STB
supertropical bleach

STP
soldier training publication

STRAC
Standards in Training Commission

STX
situational training exercise

T&EO
training and evaluation outline

TACSOP
tactical standing operating procedure

TAMMS
The Army Maintenance Management System

TC
technical coordinator; training circular; track commander; tank commander

TEK
traffic encryption key

TEWT
tactical exercise without troops

TF
task force; total float

TG
trainer's guide

TM
team; technical manual; trademark

TNT
trinitrotoluene

TOC
tactical operations center

TOE
table(s) of organization and equipment

TRADOC
United States Army Training and Doctrine Command

TRP
target reference point; traffic regulation plan

TSK
transmission security key

UAV
unmanned aerial vehicle

UCMJ
Uniform Code of Military Justice

UPW
unit proficiency work sheet

US
United States

USA
United States of America; United States Army

USAREUR

United States Army, Europe

USMTF
United States message text format

UXO
unexploded ordnance

WAM
wide-area munition; wide area mine

WCS
weapon control status; weapon control station

WESTCOM
United States Army, Western Command

WO
warrant officer; warning order

XO
executive officer

REFERENCES

Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 190-51	Security of Unclassified Army Property (Sensitive and Nonsensitive). 30 September 1993
AR 190-8	Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees. 1 October 1997
AR 200-1	Environmental Protection and Enhancement. 21 February 1997
AR 220-1	Unit Status Reporting. 30 November 2001
AR 27-1	Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Services. 3 February 1995
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 29 September 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994
AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990
AR 530-1	Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995
AR 600-15	Indebtedness of Military Personnel. 14 March 1986
AR 608-99	Family Support, Child Custody, and Paternity. 1 November 1994
AR 700-138	Army Logistics Readiness and Sustainability. 16 September 1997
AR 710-1	Centralized Inventory Management of the Army Supply System. 15 November 2002
AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997
AR 725-50	Requisition, Receipt, and Issue System. 15 November 1995
AR 750-1	Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. 1 August 1994

Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1248	Road Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1249	Bridge Reconnaissance Report. 1 July 1960
DA FORM 1250	Tunnel Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1251	Ford Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1252	Ferry Reconnaissance Report. 1 January 1955
DA FORM 1296	Stock Accounting Record. 1 January 1982
DA FORM 1297	Stock Accounting Record Title Insert. 1 January 1982
DA FORM 1298	Due Out Record. 1 January 1982
DA FORM 1300-2	Computation Card. 1 January 1982
DA FORM 1355-1-R	Hasty Protective Row Minefield Record. 1 September 2001
DA FORM 1711-R	Engineer Reconnaissance Report. 1 May 1985
DA FORM 2028	Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. 1 February 1974
DA FORM 2166-8	Noncommissioned Officer Evaluation Report (NCOER). 1 October 2001
DA FORM 2166-8-1	NCO Counseling Checklist/Record. 1 October 2001

DA FORM 2404	Equipment Inspection and Maintenance Worksheet. 1 April 1979
DA FORM 2405	Maintenance Request Register. 1 April 1962
DA FORM 2407	Maintenance Request. 1 July 1994
DA FORM 272	Register of Vouchers to Stock Record Account. 1 January 1982
DA FORM 2765-1	Request for Issue or Turn-in. 1 April 1976
DA FORM 4999	Due in Record. 1 January 1982
DA FORM 67-9	Officer Evaluation Report. 1 October 1997

Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures). 31 December 1997
DA PAM 710-2-2	Supply Support Activity Supply System: Manual Procedures. 30 September 1998
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

Department of Defense Publications

DD FORM 1348	DOD Single Line Item Requisition System Document (Manual). 1 July 1991
DD FORM 1348-6	DOD Single Line Item Requisition System Document (Manual Long-Form). 1 February 1985
DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996
DOD REG 4500.9-R PT III	Defense Transportation Regulation Part III Mobility. 1 November 2001

Field Manuals

FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 10-23	Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996
FM 10-23-1	Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations. 17 March 1992
FM 10-64	Mortuary Affairs Operations. 16 February 1999
FM 10-67-1	Concepts and Equipment of Petroleum Operations. 2 April 1998
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 20-32	Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998
FM 21-10	Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000
FM 21-16	Unexploded Ordnance (UXO) Procedures. 30 August 1994
FM 21-20	Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992
FM 21-75	Combat Skills of the Soldier 3 August 1984
FM 22-51	Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994
FM 24-1	Signal Support in the AirLand Battle. 15 October 1990
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-33	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990
FM 25-100	Training the Force. 15 November 1988
FM 25-101	Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990
FM 3-0	Operations. 14 June 2001

FM 3-11	Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-11.11	Flame, Riot Control Agents and Herbicide Operations. 10 March 2003
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993
FM 3-19.30	Physical Security. 8 January 2001
FM 3-19.4	Military Police Leaders' Handbook. 4 March 2002
FM 3-19.40	Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001
FM 3-20.98	Reconnaissance Platoon. 1 May 2001
FM 3-21.38	Pathfinder Operations. 1 October 2002
FM 3-21.71	Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (Bradley). 20 August 2002
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992
FM 3-34.2	Combined-Arms Breaching Operations. 31 August 2000
FM 3-4	NBC Protection. 29 May 1992
FM 34-2-1	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance. 19 June 1991
FM 34-45	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Electronic Attack. 9 June 2000
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000
FM 3-50	Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990
FM 3-90	Tactics. 4 July 2001
FM 3-90.1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 9 December 2002
FM 4-01.011	Unit Movement Operations. 31 October 2002
FM 4-25.11	First Aid. 23 December 2002
FM 4-25.12	Unit Field Sanitation Team. 25 January 2002
FM 4-30.3	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000
FM 44-100	US Army Air and Missile Defense Operations. 15 June 2000
FM 44-64	SHORAD Battalion and Battery Operations. 5 June 1997
FM 44-8	Combined Arms For The Air Defense. 1 June 1999
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996
FM 4-93.4	Theater Support Command. 15 April 2003
FM 5-10	Combat Engineer Platoon. 3 October 1995
FM 5-100	Engineer Operations. 27 February 1996
FM 5-102	Countermobility. 14 March 1985
FM 5-103	Survivability. 10 June 1985
FM 5-104	General Engineering. 12 November 1986
FM 5-116	Engineer Operations: Echelons Above Corps. 9 February 1999
FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998
FM 5-250	Explosives and Demolitions. 30 July 1998
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999
FM 5-430-00-1	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Road Design. 26 August 1994
FM 5-430-00-2	Planning and Design of Roads, Airfields, and Heliports in the Theater of Operations - Airfield and Heliport Design. 29 September 1994
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 5-71-2	Armored Task-Force Engineer Combat Operations. 28 June 1996
FM 5-71-3	Brigade Engineer Combat Operations (Armored). 3 October 1995
FM 6-22.5	Combat Stress. 23 June 2000

FM 63-1	Support Battalions and Squadrons, Separate Brigades and Armored Cavalry Regiment. 30 September 1993
FM 63-2	Division Support Command, Armored, Infantry, and Mechanized Infantry Divisions. 20 May 1991
FM 63-20	Forward Support Battalion. 26 February 1990
FM 63-21	Main Support Battalion. 7 August 1990
FM 63-3	Corps Support Command. 30 September 1993
FM 7-0	Training the Force. 22 October 2002
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 7-92	The Infantry Reconnaissance Platoon and Squad (Airborne, Air Assault, Light Infantry). 23 December 1992
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 14 April 2000
FM 8-285	Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995
FM 8-51	Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 September 1994
FM 90-7	Combined Arms Obstacle Integration. 29 September 1994
FM 9-43-2	Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair. 3 October 1995

Other Product Types

STANAG 2036 (ENGR)	Land Minefield Laying, Marking, Recording, and Reporting Procedures. 12 February 1987.
TRADOC PAM 11-9	Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice

Soldier Training Publications

STP 5-12B24-SM-TG	MOS 12B, Combat Engineer, Skill Levels 2/3/4, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 28 March 2003
STP 5-62G13-SM-TG	MOS 62G, Quarrying Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide. 5 May 1986

Technical Manuals

TM 11-5805-262-12	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual for Switchboards, Telephone, Manual, SB-22/PT (NSN 5805-00-257-3602) and SB-22A/PT (5805-00-715-6171) (Including Tone Signaling Adapter, TA-977/PT (5805-01-040-9653)). 15 June 1990
TM 11-5805-294-12	Operator's and Organizational Maintenance Manual for Manual Telephone Switchboard, SB-993/GT (NSN 5805-00-708-2202). 8 September 1983

Training Circulars

TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988

Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

Field Manuals

FM 5-170	Engineer Reconnaissance. 5 May 1998
FM 5-34	Engineer Field Data. 30 August 1999

Other Product Types

UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice

QUESTIONAIRE

MTP NUMBER _____ DATE _____

MTP TITLE _____

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire for your records. Mail to: Commander, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-E, Building 3200, Directorate of Training Development, 320 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 220, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (for example, company commander or platoon sergeant)?

_____

2. How long have you served in this position? _____

3. How long have you served in this unit? _____

4. What is your component?

   a. Active component
   b. Reserve component

5. Where is your unit?

   a. Continental United States (CONUS)
   b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
   c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
   d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
   e. Other (specify)
      _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel that this MTP has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

   a. Has made training worse
   b. Has made training better
   c. Has had no affect on training
   d. Do not know or do not have an opinion

7. How easy is the MTP to use, compared to other training products?

   a. Harder
   b. Easier
   c. About the same
   d. Do not know or do not have an opinion

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training
b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes
c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans
d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises
e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines
f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation
g. Do not know or do not have an opinion

8. What part of the MTP was least useful? _____

9. What part of the MTP was most useful? _____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?

_____

_____

11. What part of the MTP was the easiest to understand?

_____

_____

12. The training exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
b. They help but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit training requirements.
c. They help but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit training requirements.
d. They help but only provide between 51 and 80 percent of my unit training requirements.
e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STXs be added or deleted from the MTP?

_____

_____

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the training exercises?

a. Has too many pages
b. Are hard to read and understand
c. Need more illustrations
d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises
e. Need more information on leader training
f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises
g. Need more information on support and resources
h. Need more information on the elements that are normally attached
i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills
j. Do not know or do not have an opinion

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the training exercises?

    a. Has too many pages
    b. Are hard to read and understand
    c. Need more illustrations
    d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises
    e. Need more information on leader training
    f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises
    g. Need more information on support and resources
    h. Need more information on normally attached elements
    i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills
    j. Do not know or do not have an opinion

16. How many STXs have you trained or participated in personally? _____

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?

    a. Leave it out altogether
    b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises
    c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation
    d. Make standards less detailed
    e. Make standards more detailed
    f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime
    g. Do not change; chapter is fine
    h. Do not know or do not have an opinion

18. What changes would you make to Chapter 6, External Evaluation?

    a. Leave it out altogether
    b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises
    c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation
    d. Make standards less detailed
    e. Make standards more detailed
    f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime
    g. Do not change; chapter is fine
    h. Do not know or do not have an opinion

19. Additional comments:

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

ARTEP 5-423-35-MTP
8 JULY 2003

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

JOHN M. KEANE
General, United States Army
Acting Chief of Staff

Official:

JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0317806

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: Not to be distributed.
Electronic media only.

PIN: 080899-000